

First Semester
Module One: Technology
Unit One: Information Technology
الوحدة الأولى ثلاث قطع

نصيحة عزيزي الطالب: احفظ هذه الكلمات كقاموس لك لانها مفيدة في اسئلة المعاني وفي اجابة اسئلة ال (critical thinking) وغيرها:

كلمات مهمة للحفظ بالعربية					
	Word	المعنى		Word	المعنى
1-	seabed	قاع البحر	35-	summarise	يلخص
2-	develop	يطور	36-	compare	يقارن
3-	invent	يخترع	37-	monitor	يراقب/يوجه
4-	inventor	مخترع	38-	create	يصنع / يخلق
5-	generation	جيل	39-	research	بحث
6-	accommodate	يجعل في مكان يتسع ل	40-	present	يقدم / مضارع
7-	decade	عقد من الزمن	41-	find out	يجد
8-	scientist	عالم	42-	give a talk	يخطب بالناس
9-	produce	ينتج	43-	track	اثر/ مسار / درب
10-	appear	يظهر	44-	court	محكمة / ملعب
11-	capable	قادر	45-	rugby	لعبة الرجبي
12-	aspect	مظهر من المظاهر	46-	pitch	ملعب / حدة الصوت
13-	expand	يوسع	47-	journalist	صحفي
14-	estimate	يقدر/حوالي	48-	clerk	كاتب
15-	challenging	فيه تحدي	49-	playwright	كاتب المسرحية
16-	consequence	نتيجة / عاقبة	50-	rink	حلبة التزلج
17-	educational	تعليمي	51-	confident	واثق
18-	task	مهمة	52-	tense	متوتر/توتر
19-	perhaps	ممكن / ربما	53-	upset	غاضب
20-	worried	قلق	54-	oars	مجاديف
21-	poet	شاعر	55-	bat	مضرب / خفاش
22-	goggles	يحقق	56-	muscle	عضلة
23-	eyelids	الجفن	57-	skates	زلاجات
24-	heartbeat	خفقات القلب	58-	coal	فحم
25-	wind	ريح	59-	boil	يسلق/يغلي
26-	gas	غاز	60-	fry	يقلي
27-	energy	طاقة	61-	grill	يشوي على الفحم
28-	grateful	شاكر/ممتن	62-	mix	يخلط
29-	headlines	عناوين	63-	roast	يشوي بالفرن
30-	helmet	خوذة	64-	season	يبهر / يتبل
31-	lawyer	محامي	65-	slice	يقطع الى شراحت
32-	likely	متوقع / على الأرجح	66-	sprinkle	يرش
33-	navy	البحرية	67-	model	نموذج
34-	repair	يعيد تصليح	68-	invention	اختراع

Vocabulary:

إحفظ هذه الكلمات والعبارات انجليزي-انجليزي-عربي لتتمكن من استخدامها في الإمتحان:

Text One Vocabulary		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
calculation (n)	a way of using numbers in order to find out an amount, price or value.	عملية حسابية
computer chip (n)	a small piece inside a computer which stores information via an electric current.	رقاقة حاسوبية
floppy disk (n)	a flexible, removable magnetic disk that stores computer information.	قرص مرن
PC (n)	an abbreviation for personal computer, a computer that is used by one person at a time	الحاسوب الشخصي
program (n)	a set of instructions enabling a computer to function.	برنامج حاسوب
ICT (n.abbrev.)	Information and Communication Technology.	اختصار (تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات)
smartphone (n)	a mobile phone with advanced computing technology.	هاتف ذكي
World Wide Web (n)	an information system, known as the Internet, which allows documents to be connected to other documents, and for people to search for information by moving from one document to another.	الشبكة العنكبوتية
rely on (phrasal verb) reliable (adjective)	to have trust or confidence in something or someone	يعتمد على

Exercise 1: Choose words from the table above to fill the gaps in the following paragraph:

- Since they had invented the, life became easier. You can get access to many websites using your which is connected to the internet. Sometimes you can use your also to do your duties online instead of using a computer.

Unit One Reading: (Text One STB): The History of Computers

When you are using a computer, think about the technology that is needed for it to work. People have been using these types of computers for thousands of years. A metal machine was found on the seabed in Greece that was more than 2000 years old. It is believed that this was the first ever computer.

عندما تستخدم الحاسوب، فكر في التكنولوجيا التي يحتاجها ليعمل. لقد استخدم الناس هذه الأنواع من الحاسبات منذ آلاف السنين. وجد جهاز (مكيبة) من المعدن في قاع البحر في اليونان والتي يقدر عمرها بـ 2000 سنة. يعتقد أنها أول حاسوب في التاريخ.

In the 1940s, technology had developed enough for inventors to make the first generation of modern computers. One such model was so large, it needed a room that was 167 square meters to accommodate it. During that decade, scientists in England developed the first computer program. It took 25 minutes to complete one calculation. In 1958 CE, the computer chip was developed.

تطورت التكنولوجيا بشكل كافٍ في الأربعينيات حيث أن المستثمرين صنعوا الجيل الجديد من الحاسبات الحديثة. كان هذا النموذج كبير جداً حيث احتاج لغرفة بمساحة 167 متر مربع لوضعه فيه. خلال ذلك العقد من الزمن طور العلماء في إنجلترا أول برنامج حاسوبي يحتاج إلى 25 دقيقة لإتمام عملية حسابية واحدة. في عام 1958 تم تطوير الرقاقات الحاسوبية.

The first computer game was produced in 1962 CE, followed two years later by the computer mouse. In 1971 CE, the floppy disk was invented, which meant that information could be shared between computers for the first time. The first PC (personal computer) was produced in 1974 CE, so people could buy computers to use at home.

أنتجت أول لعبة حاسوبية في عام 1962 وبعد عامين أنتجت الفأرة. وفي عام 1971 تم اختراع القرص المرن وبذلك أصبح تشارك المعلومات بين الحواسيب ممكناً لأول مرة. تم إنتاج أول حاسوب شخصي في 1974 وبذلك أصبح بإمكان الناس شراء الحواسيب واستخدامها في المنزل.

In 1983 CE, people could buy a laptop for the first time. Then, in 1990 CE, the British scientist Tim Berners-Lee developed the World Wide Web. However, it was not until 2007 CE that the first smartphones appeared. Today, most people use their mobile phones every day.

في عام 1983 أصبح بإستطاعة الناس شراء الحاسوب المحمول لأول مرة. ثم في عام 1990 طور العالم البريطاني تيم بيرنرز لبي الشبكة العنكبوتية. مع ذلك، لم يظهر أول هاتف ذكي حتى 2007. يستخدم أغلب الناس الآن هواتفهم الذكية كل يوم.

What will happen in the future? You can already buy watches which can do the same as mobile phones. Scientists have also developed glasses that are capable of doing even more than this.

ماذا سيحدث في المستقبل؟ تستطيع الآن شراء ساعات يد يمكنها ان تقوم بعمل الهاتف المتنقل. وقد طور العلماء أيضاً نظارات يمكنها اداء نفس المهمة وأكثر.

Life in the future is going to see further changes in computer technology. It is likely that all aspects of everyday life will rely on a computer program, from how we travel to how our homes are heated.

سنشهد الحياة في المستقبل تغيرات أكثر في تكنولوجيا الحواسيب. ومن المحتمل أن تعتمد أغلب مظاهر الحياة اليومية على برامج الحاسوب من كيفية التنقل إلى كيفية تدفئة منازلنا.

Exercise 2: Now, answer these questions, your answers should be based on the text.

1- How old is the world's oldest computer?

2- There are two examples of life aspects which are likely to be affected by computer technology, what are they?
.....

3- What was the first computer like and where was it found?
.....

4- Why was it possible for computer investors to develop their first generation of modern computers?

5- How long did it take the first computer to do one calculation?

6- What made it possible for people to use computers at home?
.....

7- The writer states that it was possible for people to use their personal computers at home, what are the things you think people would do at home using this fantastic machine? Give three examples.
.....
.....

8- Who developed the World Wide Web? Where is he from?
.....

9- What are smartphones? When did they first appear?
.....

10- What do the underlined words/pronouns refer to? Pick three and write them down.
.....
.....

11- Use your imagination to write three sentences describing life in 2050 affected by technology in Jordan or worldwide.
.....
.....

12- (Quote the sentence) What information in the text shows that the first modern computers were very large?
.....
.....
.....

13- List the inventions that were completed between 1958 CE and 1974 CE.

.....

.....

.....

14- How do you think computer technology will develop further in the future? How far do you agree with the article?

.....

.....

.....

15- We rely more and more on computer technology. How far do you agree that this is a positive development?

.....

.....

.....

16- Which form of modern technology do you think is the most useful? Why?

.....

.....

17- What are the advantages and disadvantages of having laptop computers, tablet computers or smartphones?

.....

.....

.....

18- What would life be like without computers?

.....

.....

19- Find a word from the text which means “a type of computer”?

- ملاحظة: قبل الحل يجب عليك عزيزي الطالب ما يلي:

1- قراءة السؤال كاملاً لأن الطلب أحياناً يكون في النهاية مثل (هناك خمس عوامل اعط 3 منها)

إذا كتبت 4 أو 5 يعتبر السؤال خطأ. فلنتفق على قراءة السؤال حتى نهايته.

2- يجب عليك حفظ الكلمات المفتاحية في الأسئلة مثل:

prevent (يمنع) (أذكر) mention (متى) when (أين) where (لمن) whose (لماذا) why (ما/ماذا) what

include (يتضمن) (رأي) opinion (وضح \ اشرح) explain (جد كلمة) find a word (إقتبس) quote

allow (يسمح) (يحتوي) contain (بالرجوع ل \ طبقاً ل \ نسبة ل فقرة رقم كذا) according to (يعود على) refer to

3- ما يقوله لك عقلك بشكل تلقائي غالباً ما يكون هو الصواب، وإذا لم تكن متأكد من الحل فالوسيلة الوحيدة هي مراجعة الحل بناء على ما درست وليس بالاستماع إلى الطلاب لأنهم غالباً ما يجعلونك تقوم بتغيير الصواب إلى خطأ مع تحمل ما يترتب على الغش من نقص علامات أو حرمان من الإمتحان أو إثم.

Text Two Vocabulary		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
blog (n) (v)	a regularly updated personal website or web page, usually written in an informal style.	سجل شخصي على الانترنت
email exchange (n) email (v) exchange emails (V)	a series of emails between two or more people, each email generally a reply to the previous one.	تبادل الرسائل الإلكترونية
social media (n)	social interaction between people and communities on websites or blogs.	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعية على لانترنت
tablet computer (n)	a mobile computer, with a touch screen, processor and battery all in one unit.	الحاسوب اللوحي
whiteboard (n)	a touchscreen computer program that enables you to draw sketches, write and present ideas and talk to colleagues or students.	اللوحة الذكية
programme (n)	content which is intended to be listened to on radio or watched on television.	برنامج تلفزيوني
post (v) (n)	to put a message or document on the Internet so that other people can see it.	ان تضع تعليق او رسالة
web-building program (noun)	a software that helps you to create a website.	برنامج إنشاء المواقع الإلكترونية
web hosting (n)	the business of housing, serving and maintaining files for one or more websites.	استضافة المواقع الإلكترونية

Exercise 3: Use words from the table above to complete the following sentences:

- 1- My teacher told me that I need to add material to my personal
- 2- Many young children are professional in using
- 3- People in high-tech cities in everyday life.

Unit One Reading: (Text Two STB): Using Technology in Class

Young people love learning, but they like learning even more if **they** are presented with information in an interesting and challenging way. Today, I am going to give a talk about how you can use technology in Jordanian classrooms.

يحب الصغار التعلم ولكم يعجبهم التعلم أكثر اذا قدمت المعلومات لهم بطريقة مثيرة للإعجاب وبها نوع من التحدي. سأحدث اليوم عن كيفية استخدام التقنية (التكنولوجيا) في الغرف الصفية في الأردن.

Here are some Ideas: Many classrooms now use a whiteboard as a computer screen. As a consequence, teachers can show websites on the board in front of the class. Teachers can then use the internet to show educational programmes, play educational games, music, recordings of languages, and so on.

إليك بعض الأفكار: يستخدم اللوح الذكي كشاشة كمبيوتر في العديد من الغرف الصفية. كنتيجة لذلك، يستطيع المعلم ان يعرض مواقع انترنت على اللوح أمام الطلاب. ويستطيع المعلمون بذلك استخدام الانترنت لعرض برامج تعليمية وان يلعبوا ألعاب تعليمية ويشغل الموسيقى وتسجيلات صوتية خاصة باللغات وهكذا.

In some countries, tablet computers are available for students to use in class. Therefore, students can use the tablets to do tasks such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams. Tablets are ideal for pair and group work.

تتوفر في بعض الدول حاسبات لوحية للطلاب ليستخدموها في الغرف الصفية. وبذلك يستطيع الطلاب استخدام هذه الحواسيب اللوحية للقيام بالمهام كعرض الصور والبحث عن المعلومات وتسجيل المقابلات وعمل اشكال.

Teachers can perhaps ask **their** students to start writing a blog (an online diary), either about **their** own lives or as if they were someone famous. **They** can also create a website for the classroom. Students can contribute to the website, so for example **they** can post work, photos and messages.

ربما يستطيع المعلمون أن يطلبوا من طلابهم أن ينشؤا مدونة (مذكرات يومية على الإنترنت) إما عن حياتهم الخاصة أو كأشخاص مشهورين. يستطيعون أيضاً إنشاء موقع إلكتروني لصفهم. ويستطيع الطلاب المشاركة عبر هذا الموقع، على سبيل المثال، يستطيعون أن يشاركو أعمالهم وصورهم ورسائلهم.

Most young people communicate through social media, by **which** they send each other photos and messages via the internet. Some students like to send messages that are under 140 letters for anyone to read. Teachers can ask students to summarise information about what **they** have learnt in class in the same way. If students learn to summarise quickly, **they** will be able to use this skill in future.

يتواصل أغلب الشباب على المواقع الاجتماعية والتي عن طريقها يرسلون الصور والرسائل لبعضهم عن طريق الإنترنت. يحب بعض الطلاب إرسال الرسائل التي تتكون من أقل من 140 حرف لأي أحد ليقرأها. يستطيع المعلمون أن يطلبوا من طلابهم تلخيص معلومات عما تعلموا في الصف بنفس الطريقة. إذا تعلم الطلاب التلخيص بسرعة سيتمكنون من استخدام هذه المهارة في المستقبل.

We all like to send emails, don't we? Email exchanges are very useful in the classroom. Teachers can ask students to email what **they** have learnt to students of a similar age at another school. **They** could even email students in another country. As a result, students can then share information and help each other with tasks.

نحب كلنا إرسال الرسائل الإلكترونية، أليس كذلك؟ تبادل الرسائل الإلكترونية مفيد جداً في الغرف الصفية. يستطيع المعلمون أن يطلبوا من طلابهم إرسال ما تعلموا لطلاب بنفس اعمارهم في مدارس أخرى. بل ويستطيعون مراسلة طلاب من دول ثانية. وكنتيجة لذلك، يستطيع الطلاب عندها مشاركة المعلومات ومساعدة بعضهم في المهام.

Another way of communicating with other schools is through talking to people over computer. Most computers have cameras, so you can also see the people you are talking to. In this way, students **who** are studying English in Jordan can see what students in England are doing in the classroom while they are speaking to **them**. You can also use this system to invite guest speakers to give talks over a computer. For example, scientists or teachers from another country could give a lesson to the class. If you had this type of lesson, the students would be very excited.

وكطريقة أخرى للتواصل مع مدارس أخرى هي التحدث معاً عبر الحاسوب. تحتوي اغلب الحاسبات على كامرا تمكّنك من رؤية الذين تكلمهم. وبهذه الطريقة يتمكن الطلاب الذين يدرسون اللغة الإنجليزية في الأردن ان يروا ماذا يفعل الطلاب في انجلترا اثناء تحدثهم معهم. يمكنك ايضاً استخدام هذا النظام لدعوة ضيوف للتحدث معهم على الحاسوب. كمثال، يستطيع علماء أو معلمين من دول أخرى اعطاء حصة للصف. اذا تمكنت من تطبيق مثل هذا الدرس سيتمس الطلاب كثيراً.

Students often use computers at home if **they** have **them**. Students can use social media on **their** computers to help **them** with **their** studies, including asking other students to check and compare their work, asking questions or sharing ideas. The teacher must be part of the group, too, to monitor what is happening. Thank you for listening. Does anyone have any question?

يستخدم الطلاب احياناً الحاسبات في المنزل اذا توفرت لديهم. يستطيع الطلاب توظيف المواقع الإجتماعية لمساعدتهم في دراستهم بما في ذلك سؤالهم لطلاب آخرين أن يصححوا ويقارنوا اعمالهم، أو يسألوا أسئلة أو أن يشاركوا افكاراً. يجب أن يكون المعلم جزء من هذه المجموعة ليشرّف على ما يحدث. شكراً للإستماع. هل لديكم اي سؤال؟

Exercise 4: Now, answer these questions, your answers should be based on the text.

1- In what ways can digital information be used to educate people?

.....

2- Do you think that computers will replace books one day? Why/Why not?

.....

3- How can we make learning more interesting for students?

.....

4- What are the consequences of using whiteboards at schools?

.....

5- The text contains many benefits of tablet computers, write them down?

.....

6- What is a 'blog'?

.....

7- What type of messages do young people like to send?

.....

8- How can email exchanges be useful in the classroom? Suggest three advantages and write them down, you can go back to the text.

.....

.....

9- What is the device in a computer or a smartphone which enables you of seeing others while talking to them?

.....

10- (Think-think-think!!!)- Without copying from the text, how can you, personally, use your computer and social media websites to help yourself with your study?

.....

.....

11- What is the role of the teacher when students use social media?

12- What do the underlined pronouns and words refer to in the previous text?

13-Work in pairs. Explain the difference in meaning between these phrases from the article.
(مهم)

- 1- to share / compare ideas
- 2- to create / contribute to a website.....
- 3- to research / present information.....
- 4- to monitor / find out what is happening.....
- 5- to give a talk to / talk to people.....
- 6- to show / send photos.....

14- In what ways are web pages different to pages in books or magazines?

15- Are some web pages easier to use than others? Why/Why not?

16- What do you think makes a good website?

17- What does a web-building program help you to do?

18- Why do you need web hosting?

19- What is a domain name?

20- What costs are there in starting a website?

21- Read the quote: "Technology is just a tool. In terms of getting the kids working together and motivating them, the teacher is the most important." Do you agree with it? Why/Why not?

Text Three Vocabulary		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
access (v) (n) accessible (adj)	to find information, especially on a computer.	الوصول الى
filter (n) (v)	a program that checks whether certain content on a web page should be displayed to the viewer.	فلتر / اداة للتصفية
identity fraud (noun)	illegal actions using the identity of someone else, normally to buy things.	إنتحال الشخصية
privacy settings (n)	controls available on social networking sites which let you decide who can see what information.	اعدادات الخصوصية
security settings (n)	controls available on computer programs which let you protect your computer from viruses.	إعدادات الحماية
sat nav system (n)	satellite navigation system a system of computers and satellites, used in cars and other places that tells you where something is, where you are or how to get to a place.	نظام تحديد المواقع
user (n)	a person who uses a product or service, especially a computer or another machine.	مستخدم

Exercise 5: Use words or phrases from the table above to fill the following gaps giving meaningful sentences:

- 1- You can easily adjust your on Facebook, so no one can search your private details.
- 2- I like to experiment with different lights on my camera.
- 3- The national identity card system would help to tighten security against
- 4- Most people who live in big countries use the to show them the way.

Unit One Reading: (Text Three WB): The Internet of Things

A- What is the 'Internet of Things'?

Everyone knows that the internet connects people, but now **it** does more than **that** – it connects objects, too. These days, computers often communicate with each other; for example, your TV automatically downloads your favourite TV show, or your 'sat nav' system tells you where you are. This is known as the 'Internet of Things', and there's a lot more to come.

ما هو (الإنترنت ايو الأشياء)
كلنا نعرف ان الإنترنت يجعل الناس متصلين ببعضهم ولكن الإنترنت يفعل اكثر من ذلك الآن، يربط الإنترنت الاجهزة ببعضها ايضا. تتفاعل الحواسيب ببعضها، يقوم تلفازك الخاص بتحميل برامجك المفضلة او يقوم جهاز الملاحة باخبارك عن مكانك. هذا معروف باسم "انترنت ايو الأشياء" وهناك المزيد.

B- An Easy Life!

In just a few years' time, experts say that billions of machines will be connected to each other and to the internet. As a consequence, computers will increasingly run our lives for us. For example, your fridge will know when you need more milk and add **it** to your online shopping list; your windows will close if **it** is likely to rain; your watch will record your heart rate and email your doctor; and your sofa will tell you when you need to stand up and get some exercise.

حياة اسهل!
يقول الخبراء انه في غضون السنوات القليلة المقبلة ستكون الأجهزة متصلة ببعضها عن طريق الإنترنت. ونتيجة لذلك، ستدير الحاسبات حياتنا عوضاً عنا. ستعرف ثلاجتك على سبيل المثال عن حاجتك للمزيد من الحليب وستضيف ذلك إلى لائحة التسوق الالكترونية الخاصة بك. ستتغلق نوافذك اذا كان من المحتمل ان يهطل المطر، وستسجل ساعتك معدل نبض قلبك وستراسل طبيبك. سيخبرك مقعدك عن حاجتك للنهوض والتمرن.

C- Is Progress Always Good?

Many people are excited about the 'Internet of Things'. For **them**, a dream is coming true. They say that our lives will be easier and more comfortable. However, **others** are not so sure. **They** want to keep control of their own lives and **their** own things. In addition, they wonder what would happen if criminals managed to access **their** passwords and security settings. The dream could easily become a nightmare.

هل التطور دائماً جيد؟
العديد من الناس متحمسون بشأن الإنترنت ابو الأشياء هذا، فبالنسبة لهم هو حلم يتحقق. يقولون أن حياتنا ستكون اسهل ومريحة اكثر. اما بعض الآخرين فهم ليسوا واثقين. يريدون ان يبقوا مسيطرون على حياتهم واشيائهم الشخصية. ويتسألون علاوة على ذلك ماذا سيحدث لو تمكن المجرمون من التوصل إلى كلمات المرور واعدادات الامان الخاصة بهم. سيتحول الحلم ببساطة إلى كابوس.

Exercise 6: Read the article once more, then answer the following questions.

1- What does the 'Internet of Things' mean? Give an example from the text.
.....
.....

2- Find a word in the first paragraph which has the same meaning as 'speak to'.
.....

3- How will the 'Internet of Things' help you to keep fit, according to the text?
.....

4- What does the word 'others' in bold in the third paragraph refer to?

5- According to the text, why are some people excited about the future? Why are others worried?
.....
.....
.....

6- In your opinion, is the 'Internet of Things' exciting or worrying? Why?

7- What does the internet connect?

8- Define "sat nav"

9- Give examples explaining how computers would run our lives.

10- Why do some people not agree with the fact that our lives will be controlled by computers in the near future?

11- Do you agree with the fact that our lives will soon be controlled by artificial intelligence? Why/Why not? Give your own reasons.

12- What do the underlined pronouns/words in the text refer to?

- Phrasal Verbs & Verb Phrases:

- إحتفظ هذه الأفعال (phrasal Verbs) وهي أفعال بجانبها حرف جر تعطي معنى مختلف عن المعنى المجرد للفعل

Verb	المعنى بالعربي
STB P.10	
fill in	يعبئ نموذج
give out	يعطي (معلومات)
turn on	يشغل (يجعل الشيء يعمل)
connect with	يتواصل مع
know about	يعرف عن / يتعلم عن
WB P.4	
get started	يبدأ / ينطلق / يهيم بالبدء
look around	يلقي نظرة
meet up	يلتقي
settle down	يستقر
take place	يحدث
wake up	يستيقظ

Exercise 7: Complete the verb phrases and phrasal verbs with the correct words.

- 1- to know dangers of the Internet.
- 2- to connect people on the Internet.
- 3- to turn privacy settings.
- 4- to give personal information.
- 5- to fill a form.

Extra Exercise: Choose phrasal verbs or verb phrases from the table to fill the gaps in the following sentences:

- 6- Tell me about the novel you're reading. Where does the story ?
- 7- I'm sorry I'm late. I didn't early enough.
- 8- When I graduate from university, I would like to buy a house and
- 9- If you're free at the weekend, let's and go shopping together.
- 10- I've never visited that museum. I'd like to go in and
- 11- I've got a lot of homework, so I think I should right now!

Unit One Grammar

عزيزي الطالب/ الطالبة: الوحدة الأولى تحتوي على عدد كبير من القواعد، لا تخف فأغلبها مراجعة لمادة الأول ثانوي ، ادرسها ببطء ولا تأخذ فكرة سلبية عن المادة لأن الوحدات الأخرى ستكون قصيرة نسبياً. سيتم وضع إشارة عند القواعد الرئيسية ولن توضع إشارة بجانب القواعد الثانوية (المراجعة).

1. Verb Tenses (أزمنة اللغة الإنجليزية)

- 1.1- The Present Simple (مهم)
- 1.2- The Present Continuous (مهم)
- 1.3- The Present Perfect (مهم)
- 1.4- The Present Perfect Continuous (مهم)

- 1.5- The Past Simple (مهم)
- 1.6- The Past Continuous (مهم)
- 1.7- The Past Perfect (مهم)

- 1.8- The Future with “will” (مهم)
- 1.9- The Future with “going to” (مهم)

2. The Passive (المبني للمجهول)

3. Reported Speech (مهم)

4. The Causative

5. Verbs Followed with to/ing

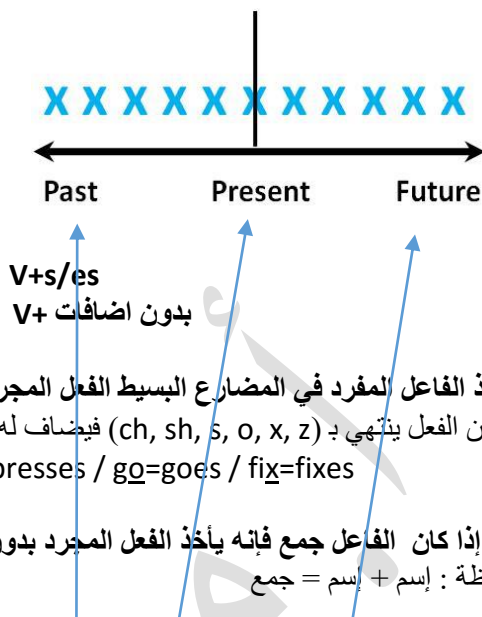
6. Explaining Possibilities

7- If Clause (Conditionals)

1.1- Simple Present

Form: شكل الزمن

(فاعل مفرد أو غير معدود اسم أو ضمير) he / she / it
(فاعل جمع اسم أو ضمير) I / you / we / they



- يأخذ الفاعل المفرد في المضارع البسيط الفعل المجرد مضافاً له (s/es) حسب الحروف التي ينتهي بها أصل الفعل:
إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (ch, sh, s, o, x, z) فيضاف له (es):

watch=watches / wash=washes / press=presses / go=goes / fix=fixes

- أما إذا كان الفاعل جمع فإنه يأخذ الفعل المجرد بدون أي إضافات وستفهم هذا بشكل موسع لاحقاً.
ملاحظة: اسم + اسم = جمع

Examples:

- You speak English.
- Do you speak English?
- You don't speak English.

هذه القاعدة تعتبر عديمة الزمن (timeless) لأنها تدل على عادات أو تقاليد أو أحداث تحدث في كل الأزمان: الماضي والمضارع والمستقبل.

Usage: استخدامات الزمن

- 1- عندما نتكلم عن العادات والروتين التي تحدث دائماً وتكرر:
- She brushes her teeth daily.
- Salwa and Nezar always drink juice instead of Pepsi.
- 2- للتحدث عن الحقائق العلمية والحالات الدائمة والعامة:
- Water boils at 100C°
- Rabbits run fast.
- 3- للجداول الزمنية في المستقبل (نوع من أنواع تكوين المستقبل):
- The train leaves tonight at 6.
- The party starts at 8 this afternoon.
- 4- للأفعال التي لا تأخذ زمناً مستمراً (non-continuous verbs):
- She is not there right now.√
- He needs help now.√

Key words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي مع هذا الزمن

- ملاحظة: لا تعتمد على الكلمات الدالة بل على معنى الجملة ومعنى الكلمات الدالة:
yearly / often / frequently (بشكل متكرر) / sometimes / occasionally (أحياناً) / never / rarely / seldom (نادرًا) / hardly ever (بالكاد) / daily / weekly / always / usually / generally (عموماً) / every / as a fact / as a habit / now (see page 8 STB)

النفي: Negation:

قاعدة: عندما لا يكون في الجملة فعل مساعد وتكون في الزمن المضارع البسيط يكون نفيها بإضافة (don't) للفاعل الجمع و (doesn't) للفاعل المفرد وبعدها فعل مجرد.

فاعل جمع	I/ you/ we/ they/ noun+noun	+ don't + V1
فاعل مفرد	he/ she/ it/ Ali/ Sami/ the cat	+ doesn't + V1

Ex:

- You speak English. - You **don't** speak English.
- It snows in Alaska. -It **doesn't** snow in Alaska.
- Water boils at 100C°. -Water **doesn't** boil at 96C°

الاستفهام: Interrogation:

- تكوين السؤال في المضارع البسيط يكون بوضع (Do) او (Does) في بداية الجملة متبوعتان بالفاعل ومن ثم الفعل المجرد وفي نهايتها علامة إستفهام.

Do	(فاعل جمع) (they / we / you / I)	? فعل مجرد +
Does	(فاعل مفرد) (he/she/it)	? فعل مجرد +

لا تنس أن (do/does/don't/doesn't) تجعل الفعل الذي بعدها مجرد

Ex:

- You speak English.
-Do you **speak** English?
- It snows in Alaska.
-Does it **snow** in Alaska?
- She brushes her teeth daily.
-Does she **brush** her teeth daily?
- Water boils at 100C°
-Does it **boil** at 100C°?

ملاحظات:

- (V1) و (infinitive) و (base) كلها معانٍ لنفس الكلمة وهي أفعال العامود الأول (المجردة).
- إذا جاءت (be) في الفراغ الخاص بالسؤال في المضارع البسيط يكون حلها حسب الفاعل إما (is) او (am) او (are).
- (have) هو الفعل المجرد فلا يجوز ان نضع (have) بل نضع (has) عندما يكون الفاعل مفرد في المضارع البسيط.
- (do / does) تعيد الفعل بعدها إلى الحالة الأولى أي المجردة.

لاحظ أن:

- He ...is..... (be) a doctor.
- Iam..... (be) a doctor.
- Theyare..... (be) doctors.
- Heisn't..... (not be) a doctor.

Exercise 1: Correct the verbs between brackets:

- 1- You (speak) English every day.
- 2-you (speak) English daily?
- 3- You (not speak) English as a habit.
- 4- I (not/play) tennis at school every day.

- 5- She (not play) tennis every day.
- 6- he (play) tennis at school every day?
- 7- The train (leave) at 8 am every morning.
- 8- The train (not leave) at 9 am in the morning daily.
- 9- When the train usually (leave)?
- 10- She usually (not/forget) her purse.
- 11- He never (forget) his wallet.
- 12- Earth (circle) the sun every twelve months.

Exercise 2: Use is / am / are :

- 1- He (be) a doctor.
- 2- I (be) a doctor.
- 3- He (not be) a doctor.
- 4- They (not be) doctors.

Exercise 3- Make NEGATIVE:

- 1- You speak English when you see American tourists.

.....

- 2- They play tennis at schools every Monday.

.....

- 3- She plays football whenever she is free.

.....

Exercise 4- Make QUESTIONS:

- 1- You speak English when you see American tourists.

.....?

- 2- They play tennis at schools every Monday.

.....?

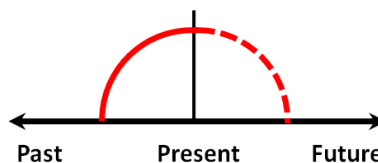
- 3- She plays football whenever she is free.

.....?

1.2- Present Continuous

Form: شكل الزمن

he/she/it + غير المعدود + is
I + am
you/they/we + are } + V1 + ing



- الفاعل المفرد (he/she/it) او اي اسم مفرد او غير معدود (Ali/Salma/The cat) يأخذ الفعل المساعد (is) وفعل مجرد مضاف له (-ing).
- الفاعل الجمع (you/we/they) او اي اسم جمع مثل (Ali and Salma/The cats) يأخذ الفعل المساعد (are) وفعل مجرد مضاف له (-ing).
- الفاعل المتكلم المفرد (I) يأخذ الفعل المساعد (am) وفعل مجرد مضاف له (-ing).

Examples:

- She **is eating** mansaf.
- **Are** they **playing** football in the club right now?
- I **am not dancing** with a friend.

Usage: استخدامات الزمن

- 1- للكلام عن حدث ما يحدث في نفس وقت الكلام أي ان هناك شيء يحدث ونحن نتكلم عنه وهو يحدث:
 - My mother is screaming.
 - The car is moving.
 - I am walking to school rightnow.
- 2- للكلام عن احداث تحدث وتستمر خلال فترة مؤقتة:
 - Newspapers are talking about wars nowadays.
- 3- للكلام عن ترتيبات المستقبل (المخطط لها) وهو نوع من انواع صياغة المستقبل ولكنه يأخذ شكل المضارع المستمر:
 - Delila and Sue are coming next Friday.
- 4- للأحداث التي تحدث بشكل متكرر بشكل متقطع و نستخدم (always) في الجملة:
 - She's always complaining about the weather.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي مع هذا الزمن

now / at the moment / look! / listen! / look out! / be careful! / nowadays / watch out! / be quiet! / at this time / again

Negation: النفي

- عند نفي المضارع المستمر نضع (not) او (n't) بعد الفعل المساعد (is/am/are) فتصبح الجملة منفية.
- ملاحظة: طريقة النفي هذه هي طريقة النفي لكل الأزمنة عدا المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط.

Examples:

- She is eating Mansaf. - She **isn't** eating Mansaf.
- I am listening to music at the monent. - I am **not** listening to music at the monent.

Interrogation: الإستفهام

- عندما نريد تكوين سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر فإننا: 1- نضع الفعل المساعد في بداية الجملة. 2- نضع الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد. (أي نعكس مكان الفعل المساعد والفاعل). 3- لا ننس وضع علامة السؤال.

Examples:

- They **are** playing football in the club rightnow. - **Are they** playing football in the club rightnow?
- Shaher **is** playing tennis now. - **Is Shaher** playing tennis now?
- I **am** walking to school rightnow. - **Am I** walking to school rightnow? OR - **Are you** walking to school rightnow?

Exercise 1: Correct the verbs between brackets:

- 1- The population of China (rise) very fast.
- 2- I..... (study) for my exams.
- 3-Jim (help) in his brother's firm this week.
- 4-I..... (not/go) to the theatre tonight.
- 5-I (talk) on the phone right now.
- 6-What you (do)right now?
- 7-I..... (not do) anything now.
- 8-Look! The sun (rise).
- 9-We..... (have) a party on Saturday.
- 10-Gwen (not/go) to the doctor on Monday morning.
- 11- (book)- We Aqaba again in the summer. I have been looking forward to it since last year. (visit)
- 12- I you mama. (love)

ملاحظة : لا تنس حذف ال (e) من نهاية الفعل عند إضافة (ing) له:

make = making not makeing

Exercise 2- Make these sentences NEGATIVE:

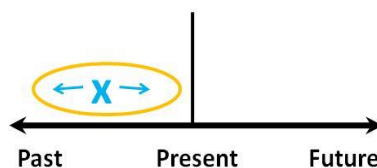
- 1- The population of China is rising very fast.
- 2- I'm studying for my exams.
- 3- Jim is helping in his brother's firm this week.
- 4- I'm going to the theatre tonight.

Exercise 3- Make these sentences QUESTIONS:

- 1- The population of China is rising very fast.
.....?
- 2- I'm studying for my exams.
.....?
- 3- Jim is helping in his brother's firm this week.
.....?
- 4- I'm going to the theatre tonight.
.....?

1.3- Present Perfect (FINISHED)

Form: شكل الزمن



(I / you / we / they / the boys) have
(he / she / it / Ahmad / Samia) has } + V3

Ex:

- They **have broken** the law.
- **Have** they **broken** the law?
- They **haven't broken** the law.

Usage: استخدامات الزمن

1- للكلام عن شيء حدث في الماضي بشكل عام ولكن لا يهم متى بالضبط ربما يحدث الآن، لا يتم تحديد متى حدث لأن إذا تم تحديده يصبح ماضٍ بسيط.

- I have swum in the Dead Sea.
- I have once eaten three meals.
- I have lived here for 3 years.

2- للكلام عن شيء كخبرة (كمشاهدة فلم أو زيارة مكان أو حدوث الشيء كخبرة) ربما يحدث لحد الآن:

- She has been in England for two weeks once before.
- Tamer has visited Egypt.
- Suzan has worked as a manager once before.

3- أشياء حدثت (مررت بها) في الماضي ولا زال لها أثر أو نتائج في الحاضر، ربما تكون قد انتهت قبل قليل:

- I have broken my leg.
- I have passed the driving license test.
- She has just fed her baby.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي مع هذا الزمن

just	yet	since	for	
already	over the last	once	recently	so far
ever	lately	twice	three times	four times

لاحظ انه أحيانا لا يأتي في السؤال في الامتحان أي دليل بل يكون هناك فعل مضارع مثل (can) ويكون هو دليل للحل.

Negation: النفي

نضيف (not) أو (n't) بعد الفعل المساعد

Subj + haven't / hasn't + V3

- I have lived here for 3 years. → I **haven't** lived here for 3 years.
- She has broken her leg. → She has **not** broken her leg.
- I have passed the driving test. → I have **not** passed the driving test.

Interrogation: الاستفهام

Have/Has + subj + V3?

عندما نريد تكوين سؤال في الزمن المضارع التام فإننا: 1- نضع الفعل المساعد في بداية الجملة. 2- نضع الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد. (اي نكون عكسنا مكان الفعل المساعد والفاعل). 3- لا ننس وضع علامة السؤال

- You **have lived** here for three years. → **Have** you **lived** here for three years?
- She has broken her leg. → **Has** she **broken** her leg?

Exercise 1: Correct the verb between brackets:

- 1- I.....(see) that movie twenty times.
- 2- I think I(meet) him once before.
- 3- There(be) many car accidents in California lately.
- 4- Peoplealready.....(travel) to the Moon.
- 5- People(not travel) to Mars yet.
- 6- you (read) the book yet?
- 7- Nobody ever (climb) that mountain.
- 8- A: there ever (be) a war in the United States?
B- Yes, there once (be) a war in the United States.
- 9- (2013)- Laila **recently** learning English. (start)
- 10 - (2011) Maher his driving test, so he **can** borrow his brother's car next week. (pass)
- 11- (2012) The children **already** the sandcastle on the beach. (build)
- 12- (2012) Our neighbours **recently** to Aqaba. (move)
- 13- A: you ever (meet) him?
- 14- You (grow) up since the last time I saw you.
- 15- The government (become) more interested in arts education.
- 16- My English really (improve) since I moved to Australia.
- 17- (2015) - I think the waiter has forgotten us. We have been waiting here for over half an hour and no body our order yet. (take)
- 18-(2015) – I think you're right. He has been walking by us and he probably thinks we already (order)

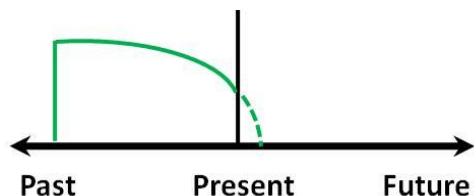
Exercise 2: make NEGATIVE:

- 1- People have travelled to Mars.
- 2- I have been to France.....
- 3- James has finished his homework yet.
- 4- I have seen that movie six times in the last month.

Exercise 3: Make QUESTIONS:

- 1- People have travelled to the Moon.?
- 2- I have been to France.....?
- 3- James hasn't finished his homework yet.?
- 4- I have seen that movie six times during the last month.?

1.4- Present Perfect Continuous (NOT FINISHED)



Form: شكل الزمن

(I / you / we / they / the boys) have } + been + ing
(he / she / it / Ahmad / Samia) has }

ملاحظة هامة جداً: في الامتحان الوزاري يأتي هذا الزمن وفي آخر الجملة الخيار كالتالي: (be/verb 1) لان الحل بدون (be) يمكن ان يتشابه مع قاعدة المضارع التام (have/has+V3) إلا مع بعض الدلائل التي يكون فيها الحل انسب بصيغة المضارع التام المستمر مثل (how long/all day/all night/again).

Usage: استخدامات الزمن

- 1- نستخدم هذا الزمن للكلام عن حدث يكون قد بدأ بالماضي و يستمر لفترة من الزمن حتى الآن:
- I have been reading a book about history.
- 2- للتأكيد على المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها حدث ما انتهى واثره واضح حتى الآن نستخدم معه (since) غالباً:
- I've been painting the house. That's why I have some paint on my clothes.
- 3- للكلام عن حدث من المتوقع ان لا ينتهي او يكتمل:
- Nadia has been writing the letter all morning.
- 4- للكلام عن حدث يتكرر خلال فتره من الزمن ممكن ان يحدث للآن:
- We have been playing tennis since June.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي مع هذا الزمن

واغلب ازمنا المضارع التام how long/ since/ for /all morning/ for a long time.

Negation: النفي

عند النفي نضع (not) او (n't) بعد الفعل المساعد مباشرة (have/has):
أمثلة:

- I have been singing for 3 hours. → I haven't been singing for 3 hours.
- Salwa has been learning English for five years. → Salwa hasn't been learning

Interrogation: الاستفهام

- عندما نريد تكوين سؤال في زمن المضارع التام المستمر: 1- نضع الفعل المساعد (Have / Has) في بداية الجملة. 2- نضع الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد. (اي نكون عكسنا مكان الفعل المساعد والفاعل). 3- نضع بعد الفاعل (been). 4- لا ننس وضع علامة السؤال.

أمثلة:

- I have been singing for 3 hours. → Have you been singing for 3 hours now?
- Salwa has been learning English for five years. → Has Salwa been learning English for five years?

Since and For

- نستخدم (since) عندما نريد ان نتكلم عن نقطة بداية مثل اسم يوم أو شهر أو عيد ميلاد أو تاريخ أو ساعة معينة.

- since the morning
- since the evening
- since Friday
- since July
- since 1999
- since he was a kid
- since I left school
- since he arrived
- since my childhood
- since last year
- since he was a boy
- since the party
- since the end of school
- since the weekend
- since Christmas

ونستخدم (for) للكلام عن الفترات الزمنية مثل:

- for a long time
- for 3 hours
- for three days
- for over 10 months
- for ever
- for half a day only
- for a few days
- for decades

أخيراً لا تنس ان تدرس الاختصارات والتقليصات:

Contractions

I have-->I've
we have-->we've
you have-->you've
they have-->they've

Examples:

- I've been studying for a day.
- They've been watching TV since morning.
- She's been eating all the time.

Exercise 1: Correct the verb between brackets:

- 1- (2011)- Maha to be a doctor **for** six years. (**be**, study)
- 2- (2012)- The detectives people **all** week. (**be**, interview)
- 3- They(be / talk) about Jordan for the last hour.
- 4- She (be / work) at the company for three years.
- 5- (2011)- Nour an essay **all** morning. (write)
- 6- Sami so hard lately? (be/work)
- 7- That man was cheating, he hard recently. (not/be/work)
- 8- (2011) Hatem looks tired. He his science project **all** night. (**be**, do)
- 9- (2012) The child has all night. (be, sleep)
- 10- What you (be / do) for the last 30 minutes?

- 11- James (be / teach) at the university since June.
- 12- (2013) - Jamal and Fawzi have evening classes for a few weeks now. (be/take)
- 13- (2014/W) - Hassan looks very pale, He has very well recently. (not/be/sleep)
- 14- (book)- We are going to Aqaba again in the summer. I forward to it since last year. (be/look)
- 15- (2015) - I think the waiter has forgotten us. We here for over half an hour and no body has taken our order yet. (be/wait)
- 16-(2015) – I think you're right. He by us and he probably thinks we have already ordered. (be/walk)
- 17- (2016) The government has hardly to raise the citizen's awareness of human rights. (be/work)

Exercise 2: make NEGATIVE:

- 1- They have been talking for the last hour.
- 2- James has been teaching at the university since June.
- 3- She has been watching too much television lately.
- 4- Lisa and I have been practicing English.

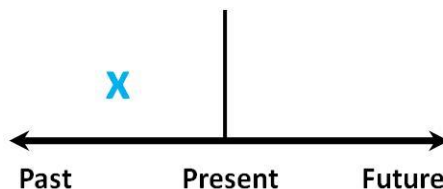
Exercise 3: Make QUESTIONS:

- 1- They have been talking for the last hour.?
- 2- James has been teaching at the university since June.?
- 3- She has been watching too much television lately.?
- 4- Lisa and I have been practicing her English.?

Exercise 4: Use since / for:

- 1- They have been talking for the last hour.
- 2- James has been teaching at the university June.
- 3- She has been working at the company three years.
- 4- We have been waiting here more than an hour.
- 5- I have been studying two hours.
- 6- Have you been studying two hours?

1.5- Simple Past



Form: شكل الزمن

he, she, it, they, you, we, I, Sami, Laila + V2

Usage: استخدامات الزمن

- 1- للكلام عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي مع تحديد متى بإضافة دلائل الماضي البسيط:
 - I **watched** a movie **yesterday**.
 - I travelled to Japan last year.
- 2- للكلام عن مجموعة من الأحداث التي كانت تحدث وانتهت في الماضي، نستخدم معها عبارة ظرف زمان :
 - I finished work, walked to the beach, and found a nice place to swim after work yesterday.
- 3- للكلام عن شيء كان يحدث في الماضي كحقيقة ونستخدم معه شبة جملة ظرفية زمانية للماضي:
 - I lived in Brazil **from 2009 to 2012**.
 - They sat on the beach **all day yesterday**.
- 4- للكلام عن العادات التي كانت تحدث في الماضي:
 - I studied French when I was a child.
 - He played the violin.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي مع هذا الزمن

last past in the past ago in 1999 yesterday

ملاحظات:

- ممكن ان يأتي في الطرف الآخر من جملة فعل ماضي تام (had+V3) دون وجود اي دليل آخر فيكون حلك (V2)..
- يمكن ان يكون الدليل وجود الماضي المستمر (was/were+V-ing) في احد اطراف الجملة فيكون حلك (V2).
- ممكن ان يكون دليلك لحل الماضي البسيط مثل (usually / always / this morning / today) ولا تستغرب من ذلك.
- لا تنس ان في جمل التمني وبعد (wish) يكون الفعل بالتصريف الثاني اي الماضي البسيط لذلك كن جاهزاً ولا تقولش ظظظربونا في الإمتحان فأنت سيد مستقبلك.

Negation: النفي

قاعدة: عندما لا يكون في الجملة فعل مساعد وتكون في الزمن الماضي البسيط يكون نفيها بإضافة (didn't\did not).

he/ she/ it/ Ali/ Sami/ the cat/ I/ you/ we/ they/ noun+noun + **didn't + V1**

Examples:

- Alia played basketball yesterday.
 - Alia **didn't play** basketball yesterday.
- It snowed in Amman a couple of years ago.
 - It **didn't snow** in Amman a couple of years ago.

قاعدة: عند نفي الماضي البسيط ب (didn't) لا تنس ان تعيد الفعل الرئيسي إلى الحالة المجردة لان (do / does / did) تعيد الفعل إلى المجرد اي يكون الفعل بعدها مجرد.

Interrogation: الإستفهام

- نكون السؤال في الماضي البسيط بوضع (Did) في بداية الجملة متبوعة بالفاعل وفي نهايتها علامة إستفهام.
Did + (فاعل) (you/ I / they/ he / she / it) + فعل مجرد?
لا تنس أن (do/does/don't/doesn't) تجعل الفعل الذي بعدها مجرد

Examples:

- You **spoke** English. → **Did** you **speak** English?
- It snowed in Amman a couple of years ago. → **Did** it **snow** in Amman a couple of years ago?
- The man went to Aqaba last year. → **Did** the man **go** to Aqaba last year?

ملاحظات:

- (V1) و (infinitive without to) و (base) كلها معانٍ لنفس الكلمة وهي أفعال العامود الأول (المجردة).
- إذا جاءت (be) في الفراغ الخاص بالسؤال في الماضي البسيط يكون حلتها حسب الفاعل إما (was) أو (were).
- (have) هو الفعل المجرد فلا يجوز أن نضع (haved) بل نضع (had) عندما تكون الجملة في الماضي البسيط.
- (do / does / did) تعيد الفعل بعدها إلى الحالة الأولى أي المجردة.

لاحظ أن:

- Iwas..... a teacher two years ago. (be)
- Theywere in Amman when It snowed. (be)

Exercise 1: Use was\were:

- 1- I happy. 2- You angry. 3- She in London last week.
- 4- He on holiday. 5- It cold. 6- We at school.

Exercise 2: Correct the verbs between brackets making past simple sentences:

- 1- They (collect) postcards yesterday.
- 2- You (jump) high last night, didn't you?
- 3- Albert (play) squash last night.
- 4- The teacher (test) our English 2 days ago.
- 5- Fiona (visit) her grandma a couple of weeks ago.
- 6- He (wash) the car yesterday.
- 7- You..... (be) thirsty when I saw you last night.
- 8- He (have) a computer in 1999.
- 9- I (buy) bread from that bakery 30 years ago.
- 10- Mahmoud **was walking** home when the rain It was very heavy, so he must have got very wet. (start)
- 11- **RIP** 2Pac, he always Perfectly and usually about problems in the society in his songs. (sing / talk)
- 12-(2011)- Hatem's father last year. He **had worked** for the same company all his life. (retire)
- 13- (وزاري) - I wish I any challenging experience in my life. (have)

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences in the negative:

- 1- They collected postcards last month.
- 2- You jumped high at school last week.
- 3- Albert played squash when he was a child.
- 4- The teacher tested our English the first day at school.
- 5- Fiona visited her grandma.
- 6- He washed the car.

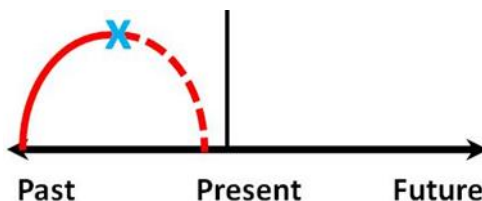
Exercise 4: Make questions in simple past:

- 1- They collected postcards.?
- 2- You jumped high.?
- 3- Albert played squash.?
- 4- The teacher tested our English.?
- 5- Fiona visited her grandma.?
- 6- He washed the car.?

1.6- Past Continuous

Form: شكل الزمن

I/he/she/it	+ was	}	+ V1 + ing
you/they/we	+ were		



- الفاعل المفرد (he/she/it/ I) او اي اسم مفرد او غير معدود مثل (Salma/The cat) يأخذ الفعل المساعد (was) وفعل مجرد مضاف له (-ing).
- الفاعل الجمع (you/we/they) او اي اسم جمع مثل (Ali and Salma/The cats) يأخذ الفعل المساعد (were) وفعل مجرد مضاف له (-ing).

Ex:

- You **were studying** when she called.
- **Were you studying** when she called?
- I **was watching** TV when she called.

Usage: استخدامات الزمن

- 1- للكلام عن الأحداث التي كانت مستمرة قبل أو بعد حدث آخر في الماضي:
 - I **was watching** TV when she called.
 - When the phone rang, she **was writing** a letter.
 - You **were not listening** to me when I told you to turn the oven off.
- 2- للكلام عن وقت محدد تم فيه حدث مستمر:
 - Last night at 6 PM, I **was eating** dinner.
 - At midnight, we **were still driving** through the desert.
- 3- للكلام عن الأحداث التي كانت تحدث لمدة طويلة أو بشكل متواز في الزمن الماضي:
 - I **was studying** while he **was making** dinner.
 - While Ellen **was reading**, Tim **was watching** television.

ملاحظة: يجب التلميح إلى أنه لا يجوز في بعض الحالات جعل الأفعال مستمرة لأنها لا تأتي بهذا الشكل أي أفعال لا تقبل الإستمرار. بل نعود إلى استخدام الماضي البسيط.

Examples:

- Jane was being at my house when you arrived. **Not Correct**
- Jane was at my house when you arrived. **Correct**

Key words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي مع هذا الزمن

when
while
as

ويمكن ان تكون الجملة بدون دلالات ولكن يجب وجود فعل ماض (V2) في الجملة.

النفي: Negation:

- عند نفي الماضي المستمر نضع (not) او (n't) بعد الفعل المساعد (was / were) فتصبح الجملة منفية.
ملاحظة: طريقة النفي المذكورة في الأعلى هي طريقة النفي لكل الأزمنة عدا المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط.

Examples:

- You were studying when she called. → You weren't studying when she called.
- When the phone rang, she was writing a letter.
- When the phone rang, she was **not** writing a letter.

الاستفهام: Interrogation:

عندما نريد تكوين سؤال في زمن الماضي المستمر فإننا:

- 1- نضع الفعل المساعد في بداية الجملة. 2- نضع الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد. (اي نكون عكسنا مكان الفعل المساعد والفاعل).
- 3- لا ننس وضع علامة السؤال.

Examples:

- They were playing football in the club. → **Were they** playing football in the club?
- Shaher was playing tennis. → Was Shaher playing tennis?

Exercise 1: Correct the verbs between brackets:

- 1- You(study) when she called.
- 2- I told him to call me back later! I an article. (write)
- 3- Rawan (not / study) when I called her, she is trying to ignore me.
- 4- I(watch) TV when the cops came to interview me.
- 5- Issa(not / watch) TV when she called.
- 6- When the phone rang, she(write) a letter.
- 7- While we(have) the picnic, it started to rain.
- 8- Whatyou(do) when the earthquake started?
- 9- I (listen) to music, so I didn't hear the fire alarm.
- 10- You(not / listen) to me when I told you to turn the oven off.
- 11- While John (sleep) last night, someone stole his car.
- 12- Sammy(wait) for us when we got off the plane.

Exercise 2: Make Negative:

- 1- The boy was walking when the dog attacked him.
.....
- 2- Thomas was working, and I was watching him.
.....
- 3- They were eating dinner, discussing their plans, and having a good time.
.....

4- She was always coming to class late.

.....

Exercise 3: Make questions:

1- While I was writing the email, the computer suddenly went off.

.....?

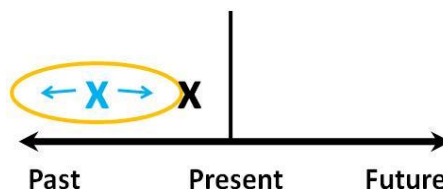
2- Last night at 6 PM, I was eating dinner.

.....?

3- We were still driving through the desert at midnight.

.....?

1.7- Past Perfect



Form: شكل الزمن

I / you / we / they / the boys / he / she / it / Ahmad / Samia + **had** + (V3)

Ex:

- You **had studied** English before you moved to New York. تمت الدراسة قبل الانتقال إلى نيويورك.
- **Had** you **studied** English before you moved to New York?

- تذكر انهما حدثين في الجملة احدهما في الماضي البسيط والآخر في الماضي التام وهو الذي حدث في أولاً. في الإمتحان تستدل على الحل من الفعل الماضي بأن تضع في الفراغ (had + V3).

Usage: استخدامات الزمن

1- للكلام عن احداث اكتملت قبل احداث اخرى في الماضي:

- I **had** never **seen** such a beautiful beach before I went to Manhattan.
- I did not have any money because I **had** **lost** my wallet.
- **Had** Susan ever **studied** Thai before she moved to Thailand?

Key words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي مع هذا الزمن

ever only never before by the time by + زمن ماضٍ after because then
- يفترض وجود فعل ماضٍ بسيط (V2) في الطرف الآخر من الجملة أو أحد دلائل الماضي البسيط.

Negation: النفي

نضيف (not) او (n't) بعد الفعل المساعد

Subj + hadn't + V3

Examples:

- She understood the movie because she **had read** the book.
- She didn't understand the movie because she **hadn't read** the book.
- Kristine **had been** to an opera before. → Kristine **hadn't been** to an opera before.

Interrogation: الاستفهام

Had + subj + V3

عندما نريد تكوين سؤال في زمن الماضي التام فإننا: 1- نضع الفعل المساعد في بداية الجملة. 2- نضع الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد. (اي نكون عكسنا مكان الفعل المساعد والفاعل). 3- لا ننس وضع علامة السؤال.

Examples:

- You had studied English before you moved to New York.
- Had you previously studied English before you moved to New York?
- Suzan had studied Thai before she moved to Thailand.
- Had Suzan studied Thai before she moved to Thailand?

Exercise 1: Correct the verbs between brackets:

- 1- You (study) English before you moved to New York.
- 2- you (study) English before you moved to New York?
- 3- You (not / study) English before you moved to New York.
- 4- Kristine never (be) to an opera before last night.
- 5- By the time Alex finished his studies, he (be) in London for over eight years.
- 6- She (visit) her relatives once in 1993 before she moved in with them in 1996.
- 7- I never (see) such a beautiful beach before I went to Kauait.
- 8- I did not have any money because I (lose) my wallet.
- 9-(2011)- Maher felt nervous because he in the Dead Sea before. (not/swim)
- 10-(2011)- Tareq felt nervous because he never before. (fly)
- 11-(2011)- Hatem's father retired last year. He for the same company all his life. (work)
- 12-(2012)- Hatem his document before viruses crashed his computer. (save)
- 13-(2013)- After we had finished our dinner, we into the garden. (go)
- 14- (2016)- Tala took three English courses in the British Council and then she went to Britain to study Medicine.
Before Tala

Exercise 2: Make Negative: (أحيانا يجب إضافة النفي لكلا الطرفين وعمل بعض التغييرات)

- 1- Tony knew Istanbul so well because he had visited the city several times.
.....

- 2- You had previously studied English before you moved to New York.
.....

Exercise 3: Make questions:

- 1 - She had visited her Japanese relatives before she moved.
.....?
- 2- She had saved the changes on the documents before the computer crashed.
.....?

1.8- The Future with "will"



Form (will+V1)

استخدامات الزمن Use

We use will+V1 to:

- Predictions about future without evidence (التنبؤات بحدوث شيء بالمستقبل بدون دليل)

- It will rain then.
- You will bleed if you cut yourself.

- Sudden/spontaneous decisions (القرارات المفاجئة والعابرة)

- I will help that man.
- I will call the police.

- Future with (perhaps/probably/maybe/ I think/I hope) (الكلام عن المستقبل بشكل عام مع)

- Children will probably learn how to ride a bike.

النفي Negation:

s. + will + not + V1 or won't + V1

- It will rain then. = It will not rain then.
- I will help that man. = I **won't** help that man.
- Children will grow up if they eat. = Children **will not** grow up if they don't eat.

الاستفهام Interrogation:

Will + s. + V1?

- Will it rain tomorrow?
- Will you help the man?
- Will children grow up if they eat?

الكلمات الدالة General Keywords:

in 2018 / in a few minutes / in a little time / in future / in the coming days / in the years to come / later / next month / next week / next year / on next monday / shortly / soon / today / evening / tomorrow / with in a week

1.9- The Future with “going to”

Form شكل الزمن



Be (is/am/are) + going to + V1

Use استخدامات الزمن

- Plans (الخطط / ليس بالضرورة للمستقبل القريب بل للبعيد أيضاً)

- The school is going to visit Petra next week.
- I am going to kill that dog.
- The experienced climber insisted that he was going to climb that mountain.

- Predictions based on evidence (التنبؤات المعتمدة على دليل)

- Look at the clouds, no doubt It is going to rain cats and dogs.
- The children are going to spend the weekend at the grands' house.

Negation النفي:

Be (not) + going to + V1

- The experienced climber **isn't** going to climb that mountain.
- Look, there are no clouds, It **is not going to** rain.
- The children **are not** going to spend the weekend at the grands' house.

Interrogation: الاستفهام

be + S + going to + V1?

- Are you going to visit your grandmother next week?
- Is she going to leave?

General Keywords الكلمات الدالة:

in 2018 / in a few minutes / in a little time / in future / in the coming days / in the years to come / later / next month / next week / next year / on next monday / shortly / soon / today / evening / tomorrow / with in a week

- هنا دليل على ضرورة استخدام العقل (في تمييز استخدامات الطريقتين) لأن الدلائل متشابهة.

Exercises 1: Complete the sentences using (will / going to) and the correct form of the verbs.

- 1- I feel really tired. I think I to bed.(go)
- 2- Where are you going? I a customer. (visit)
- 3- Would you prefer tea or coffee? I some coffee, please.(have)
- 4- What are your plans for next week? I to New York on business. (fly)
- 5- If you have a headache, Sit down and I you an aspirin. (get)
- 6- A: Why is she holding a piece of paper?
B: She (write) a letter to her friends back home in Texas.
- 7- A: I'm about to fall asleep. I need to wake up!
B: I (get) a cup of coffee. That will wake you up.
- 8- I think that player the ball. (not/score)
- 9- you that old woman? She really needs your help. (help)
- 10- (book)- We Aqaba again in the summer. I have been looking forward to it since last year. (visit) هنا نوع من التخطيط للمستقبل

Exercise 2: Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

going to + do / going to + miss / going to + take / will + have / will + stay / will + tell

- Rami has broken his leg. It (1) take a long time to get better. He (2) in hospital for at least two weeks, and he (3) his leg in plaster for much longer. Rami (4) a lot of lessons at school, but he (5) some work while he's in hospital, and he also hopes his friends (6) him about the lessons he has missed.

Exercise 3: Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs between brackets:

People (1) (use) smartphones since they (2) (invent) in the early 2000s. During the early 2000s, people (3) (buy) phones in different colours and different designs. In 2010 CE, the first tablet computer (4) (produce). By the end of 2010 CE, companies (5) (sell) more smartphones than PCs for the first time. Now, about one billion smartphones (6) (sell) around the world each year. In the near future, it (7) (estimate) that over 40% of the population in Jordan will have a smartphone. It is probable that this market (8) (expand) in the future. At the moment, people aged 16-30 (9) (buy) the most smartphones, but experts say there (10) (be) a growth in the number of older people buying smartphones in the future.

Exercise 4: Sentences of different tenses. Correct the verbs between brackets:

- 1- Today, most people their mobile phones every day. (use)
- 2- Scientists also glasses that can do the job of mobile phones. (develop)
- 3- People types of computers for thousands of years. (be/use)
- 4- One such model so large that it needed a big room. (be)
- 5- In the 1940s, technology enough for inventors to make the first generation of modern computers (develop)
- 6- What in the future? (happen)
- 7- Life in the future is going to further changes. (see)

Exercise 5: Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- In 1943 CE, the chairman of a 'business machines' company (1)..... (say) that the world only (2) (need) two or three computers. He (3) (be) wrong! Since then, there (4) (be) a technological revolution. These days, millions of families (5) (have) at least one computer at home, and many people (6) (carry) smartphones and tablets with them everywhere. A few people even (7) (wear) them – either on their wrists, round their necks or on their belts. There's even more: experts say that one day soon we (8) (attach) them to our skin!

Exercise 6: Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1- We're going to Aqaba again in the summer. Iforward to it since last year. (be/look)

2- Children often (use) computers better than their parents.

3- I (come) from Ajloun, but I (stay) in Irbid for a few months. I (return) to Ajloun in the spring.

4- Nadia has **been** (do) her homework for two hours! She will be finished very soon.

5- I (write) an email when my laptop (switch) itself off.

6- Look at the black sky! It's (rain) soon!

7- Rewrite: (هذا النمط وزاري 2016)

- Mohammad checked his emails, and then he started work. (before)

- Mohammad had

2.0- Active and Passive

- ماهو المبني للمعلوم وما هو المبني للمجهول؟

المبني للمعلوم هو الحدث الذي يعرف فاعله. أما المبني للمجهول فهو الحدث الذي لا يظهر له فاعل في الجملة أو يكون متأخر. لماذا يحذف الفاعل أو يتم تأخيرها؟ يحذف الفاعل أو يتم تأخيرها لانه غير مهم أو معروف اصلاً أو لأن التركيز في الجملة يكون على الحدث نفسه ليس على الفاعل.

- طريقة التحويل من المبني للمعلوم إلى المبني للمجهول:

- 1- إ حذف الفاعل من الجملة الأصلية.
- 2- يوضع لك المفعول به في بداية الجملة الجديدة ، احذفه من الجملة الاصل لكي لا تتكرر في الجملة الجديدة.
- 3- ضع الفعل المساعد (be) حسب زمن الجملة الأصلي ولكن يتم تحويله حسب الجدول التالي مع تحويل الفعل الرئيسي الى التصريف الثالث (V3).
- 4- أكمل الجملة ان امكن وضع الفاعل الذي حذفته من بداية الجملة الاصلية في نهاية الجملة الجديدة مسبوق ب (by) إن كان ضروريا بحيث لا يكتمل معنى الجملة بدونه، وضع علامة الترقيم المناسبة.

No	Active	Passive	Example
1-	V1 + (inf/ s / es) المضارع البسيط	is / am / are + V3	- They speak English in Jordan. - English is spoken in Jordan.
2-	V2 الماضي البسيط	was / were + V3	- They spoke English. - English was spoken.
3-	is / am / are + V-ing المضارع المستمر	is am + being + V3 are	- He is playing football. - Football is being played.
4-	was / were + V-ing الماضي المستمر	was + being + V3 were	- The man was teaching the kids. - The kids were being taught.
5-	have / has + V3 المضارع التام	have + been + V3 has	- Murad has changed the wheels. - The wheels have been changed
6-	had + V3 الماضي التام	had + been + V3	- He had broken the window. - The window had been broken.
7-	have has + been + ing had	have has + been + being + V3 had	هذا زمن مهجور
8-	will can modals + V1 must have to going to	will can modals + be + V3 must have to going to	- I will pass the exams. - The exams will be passed. - I am going to do the homework. The homework is going to be done.
9-	should will modal +have+V3 might may	should will modal +have+ been+V3 might may	- They must have introduced laws. Laws must have been introduced.

- اهداف استخدام المبني للمجهول:

1- للتركيز على خبر الجملة وليس على مبتدأها.

- Until the 1960s People hunted pandas for their skins.

- Until the 1960s pandas **were hunted** for their skins.

الكلام عن الباندا اهم من الصيادين وعملية الإصطياد

2- لجعل الجمل تبدو أكثر رسمية.

- Pandas **were** originally **found** in several parts of Asia.

3- إذا كنا لسنا بحاجة لذكر الفاعل.

- متى لا نكون بحاجة لذكر الفاعل (agent):

- My car **has been stolen**.

- إذا لم نعرف من هو الفاعل.

- Anyone who is caught hunting **is** severely **punished**.

- إذا كان الفاعل غامض او معروف للجميع.

- Panda sanctuaries **have been set up** in china.

- إذا لم يكن الفاعل مهم.

Exercise 1: - Change the following sentences from Active to Passive:

1- People speak English as a second language all over the world these days.

English.....

2- A mechanic mends cars which have problems.

Cars which have problems

3- They serve the dinner whenever we visit them.

The dinner

Note- Nobody told him to stay in the house.

- He wasn't told to stay in the house.

- He was told to stay in the house by nobody.

4- No one had touched the food before my dad came.

- The food

- The food

5- Mary hasn't written the postcard yet.

The postcard

6- Alice didn't make that pie.

لان الجملة توحى لنا أن الفطيرة قد أُعدت اصلاً ولكن الفاعل ليست الس (by) هنا يجب استخدام الفاعل مرة اخرى

That pie

7- Nobody can deny the role of the teacher.

- The role of the teacher can be denied by nobody.

- The role of the teacher can't be denied.

8- Is Tom fixing the door?
..... the door?

9- Shakespeare wrote many plays.
Many plays

10- Bill will invite Ann to the party.
Ann

11- Two horses were pulling the farmer's wagon.
The farmer's wagon

12- My cat died. هنا الجملة لا تتغير لعدم وجود مفعول به فيها لذلك تفتقر إلى اهم عنصر من عناصر المبني للمجهول.
..... NO CHANGE

13- I agree with Dr. Khalid's theory.
Dr. Khalid's theory

14- (2013)- She must take the medicine on time.
- The medicine

15- The government should have introduced restrictive laws.
- Restrictive laws

16- He can't have finished his homework. He only started five minutes ago.
- His homework

17- The fisherman might have caught big fish.
- Big fish

18- They will have mended my watch by next week.
- My watch

19- The students must have answered all the questions.
- All the questions

20- (2012)- The farmer must water the plants in order to grow.
The plants

21- (2011)- The government must save the historical sites.
The historical sites

22- They could flood large areas of land when they were building the Three Gorges Dam.
Large areas of land

23- The government cannot start working in the dam until the whole tribe move.
Working in the dam

24- She didn't play the violin.
The violin

25- She cannot play the violin.
The violin

26- Can she play the violin at the party today?
- Can the violin be played at the party today?

27- We, in this company, do not buy old computers.
Old computers

28- I may not buy the computer.
The computer

29- May I buy the computer?
May the computer

30- Guests might play chess.
Chess

31- Somebody has found my missing laptop. (been)
My

32- You must learn the test-taking strategies.
The test-taking strategies

33- You must not learn the test-taking strategies.
Test-taking strategies

34- They ought to take the examination.
The examination

35- (2014)-Everyone must save the natural resources.
The natural resources.....

36- The engineers are going to design the new highway next month.
The new highway..... next month.

37- Everybody knows that smoking is dangerous.
.....

38- In the past, most letters (write) by hand, but these days they are usually
..... (type)

39- (2016/w)- A new vocational school has recently in my area. (build)

40- People speak Spanish in most South American countries, but they speak Portuguese in
Brazil.
.....
.....

41- My mother taught me to read.
.....

42- Fifty years ago, they hadn't invented smartphones.
.....

43- Our teacher has already marked our exams, and now someone is checking them.
.....

44- They have just discovered some books that people wrote 200 years ago.
.....

45- Jordanian Sign Language, or *Lughat al-Ishara al-Urdunia* (LIU), is the sign language that
(1)..... (use) in Jordan. The language has several dialects. LIU (2) (relate) to other
sign languages in the Middle East, but none of these (3) (research) extensively. An
introductory grammar of Jordanian Sign Language (4) (publish) in 2004 CE. By
publishing this book, it (5) (hope) at the time that hearing Arabs with an interest in
sign language would learn more about the grammar of LIU and other sign languages in general.
The publication is a very important achievement for LIU because, before 2004 CE, very little
research about sign languages of the Middle East (6) (carry out). Interest in LIU has
grown since then, and at the moment, a lot of research into the language (7) (do).

46- (2016) My parents have saved enough money to fund our university courses.

- Enough money

47- (2016) Many Jordanian poems now into English, and people all
over the world are able to read them. (translate)

3.0- Grammar: Reported Speech: الكلام المنقول

قبل البدئ بشرح الكلام المنقول فلنتعرف على عدة أشياء:
- عندما نقوم بنقل كلام القائل نستخدم فعل ناقل (reporting verbs) مثل قال / يقول:

"I have three dogs."

Ali **said** that he had three dogs.

والأفعال الناقلة مختلفة:

Ali **said/told**

Ali **asked/wondered**

Ali **wanted to know/enquired**

Ali **suggested/added**

- ملاحظة: إذا كان الفعل الناقل مضارع بسيط (says) أو مضارع تام (has/have said) أو المستقبل (will say) فإننا لا نغير الأفعال في الجملة بل فقط نغير الضمائر. ولكن في مادة التوجيهي غالباً ما يطلب منك هو التحويل حيث يكون الفعل الناقل بالماضي.

"I live in Amman."

Ali **says** that he **lives** in Amman.

"I have changed my plans."

Nada **says** that she **has** changed her plans.

ونقوم بإحداث تغييرات على 1- الضمائر وصفات الملكية 2- الأفعال 3- الظروف وبعض الكلمات

"These **are** my dogs."

Ali said that **those were** his dogs.

"I can make them come **here now**."

Ali said that **he** could make them go **there then**.

ملاحظة: يمكنك تغيير الفعل أو إبقائه في حال الكلام عن حقيقة عامة أو قانون طبيعي.

- Tigers **attack** people in India.

Ali said that tigers **attack** people in India.

Ali said that tigers **attacked** people in India.

ماهو الكلام المنقول إذا: هو نقل كلام المتكلم بإرجاع خطوة زمنية إلى الوراء أي:

(مضارع ← ماضي) (ماضي ← ماضي تام)

في البداية يجب فهم وحفظ و إتقان التحويلات التي تحدث على الجملة:

الكلام المباشر الجملة الأصلية	غير المباشر الكلام المنقول
مضارع Present	ماضي Past
V1	V2
eat / eats	ate
do / does	did
don't/doesn't+V1	didn't+V1
is/am/are	was/were
have / has	had
Have +been+ing	Had+been+ing
has	
will	would
can	could مضارع would be able to مستقبل
must	had to / must
needn't	didn't have to
may	might
ought to	ought to
am	was
is + going to	+ going to
are	were
have/has + V3	had + V3
ماضي Past	ماضي تام Past perfect
V2	had + V3
ate	had eaten
had	had had
was/were	Had been
didn't + V1	hadn't + V3
was / were + ing	had been + ing
لا تغيير	
could	could/ could have + V3
would	would/ would have + V3
might	might/ might have + V3
should	should / should have + V3
had better	had better
mustn't	mustn't
ought to	ought to
used to	used to
had + V3	had + V3
had + been + ing	had + been + ing

الكلام المباشر	غير المباشر
تحويل الضمائر وصفات الملكية	
I	he she
we	they
me	him her
us	them
my	his her
you كفاعل	I we they he she
You كمفعول به	me us them him her
صفات الملكية	
our	their
your تتغير حسب المخاطب	my our their his her
ضمائر الملكية كلها	
mine	his hers
ours	theirs
الضمائر الإنعكاسية	
myself	himself herself
ourselves	themselves
yourself	himself herself

لا تنس تغيير التالي: Don't forget to change these:

Direct	Indirect
this	that
these	those
here	there
today	that day
now	then at that time
at the moment	at that moment
this week	that week
yesterday	the day before the previous day
last week	the week before the previous week
a week ago	the week before the previous week
ago	before
tomorrow	the day after the coming day the following day
next week	the week after the coming week the following week
tonight	that night
come	go

ملاحظة: مش دايمن (come) بتصير (go).
كمان ملاحظة: عندما يكون هناك فعلين في الجملة، نغير فقط الفعل الأول إلا في حالة (V1 + didn't) والتي تصبح (hadn't + V3) وحالة (was/were + ing) والتي تصبح (had + been + V-ing)، أعني أن في هاتين الحالتين نغير الفعلين معا.

نقل الجمل الخبرية 1- Reporting Declarative Sentences

عند نقل الجمل الخبرية نقوم بنقل الجملة حسب الترتيب الاصلي ونقوم بتحويل الضمائر، وصفات الملكية، والافعال وذلك بإرجاعها خطوة زمنية إلى الوراء – اي من المضارع الى الماضي ومن الماضي إلى الماضي التام- ونقوم بتغيير الظروف كما في الامثلة التالية:

Examples: جمل الكتاب

1- I'm a teacher.

- He said he was a teacher.

2- I'm having lunch with my parents.

- She said she was having lunch with her parents.

3- I've been to France three times.

- He said he had been to France three times.

4- I've been working very hard.

- He said he had been working very hard.

5- I bought a new car.

- He said he had bought a new car.

6- It was raining earlier.

- She said it had been raining earlier.

7- The play had started when I arrived.

- He said that the play had started when he arrived.

8- I'd already been living in London for five years.

- She said she'd already been living in London for five years.

- عزيزي/تي الطالب/ة لا تنسى تحويل اي كلمة من الكلمات المطلوبة لأن ذلك يعرضك لخسارة العلامة كاملة.

Exercises 1:

1-(book)- "Many computers have filters which stop people seeing certain websites."

Toney said that

2- (book)- "I have some questions for you, Badria."

Nour told Badria

3- (book)- "If they share information on social media with their friends, it might be accessed by other people, too."

Sally said that.....

4- "I've lived in Amman for six years."

Sami said

5- "My brother steals my dolls."

Helen said that

6- (book)- "Yesterday I bought all the ingredients for a chocolate cake."

Huda told me

7- (book) "On social media, you should only connect to people you know well."

The students said that.....

8- (book)- "I really enjoyed the book that I finished this morning."

Tariq said

9- (book)- "Later we will give you, our dear listeners, information about websites where you can find more advice on internet safety."

Robert said that.....

10- (book)- "My favourite subject this year is Chemistry."

Hussain told me.....

11- "My friend is with me."

Ali admitted that

12- "I am working on my project."

Brian said that.....

13- "We are having our snacks at this time."

The employees said that.....

14- (book)- "Our teacher told us about the dangers of the internet yesterday."

Farida said that

15- (book)- "I have to write an essay about it tonight."

Farida said that

16- (book)- "I think I am going to need some help."

Farida said that

Farida thought that

17- (book)- "We have to give a talk about the advantages and disadvantages of the internet next week, so I'll need to prepare it this week."

Bob said

18- "I want a sandwich."

Jennifer said

19- "I have lost my wallet in the park."

Mr. Larsen said that.....

20- "We have changed our minds."

The investors said that.....

21- "My daughter has taken my key."

Mrs. Carson said that.....

22- "I have not paid off my loan."

Diana said that.....

Diana denied

23- "We have not painted our house."

The neighbours said that.....

The neighbors denied.....

24- "My boss has not rewarded me."

Philip said that.....

Philip denied

25- "My mum has not been teaching me since lunch time."

Dalia said that.....

26- "We completed our training course."

The trainees said that.....

27- "I wrote my name on the paper."

Steven said that.....

28- "I saw my doctor yesterday."

Ronald said that.....

29- "We did our best in the final."
The players said that.....

30- "We didn't have our dinner yesterday."
The prisoners said that.....

31- "I did not give my CD to anyone."
Rosalina said that.....
Rosalina denied

32- "We did not finish our report last week."
The experts said that.....

33- "I did not do it."
The soldier said that.....

34- "We did not have our breakfast."
The children said that.....

35- "I was in my flat."
Marco said that.....

36- "We were not in our tent."
The boy-scouts said that.....

37- "My classmate was not with me."
Clara said that.....

38- "I was lying on my back."
Arnold said that.....

39- "We were cooking our dinner."
The girls said that.....

40- "My friend was tying the rope."
Amanda said that.....

41- "We were not packing our bags."
The couple said that.....

42- "We will not sue our cousin for what he has done."
The Smiths said that.....

43- "We can solve our own problems."
The girls said that.....

44- "I may use my old trick."
The old clown said that.....

45- "We must wear our uniforms."
The nurses said that.....

46- "You must come with us, Max."
The police officers said that.....
The police officers told

47- "I have to clean my room."
Thomas admitted that.....

48- "I am going to dye my hair blond."
Maggie said that.....

49- (2015/S) - Rawan is sitting in the café where Ahmad works. He tells her, "I work in this café almost every day. But yesterday I saw a famous TV presenter here for the first time. She ate ice-cream at the table where you are sitting now."

- A week later, Rawan is peaking to a friend on the phone: "I saw Ahmad at the café last week."
Ahmad Said that

.....
.....
.....
.....

50- (2014) "The engineers are going to design the new highway next month."
The manager said that

51- (2016) "We will prepare a presentation about the usage of solar power in the area."
The students said

2- Reporting Questions: نقل الاسئلة هام جداً

A- Wh-questions:

عند نقل سؤال (wh) نقوم ب 4 خطوات:

- 1- ضع كلمة السؤال (wh) والتي تكون في السؤال الاصلي في خانة الحل.
- 2- ضع بعدها الفاعل مع تحويله. وأنتبه عندما يكون الفاعل كلمتين أو أكثر (all the students) او (my brother).
- 3- ضع الفعل مع تحويله.
- 4- أكمل الجملة إذا كان لها تكملة وحول علامة الاستفهام إلى نقطة.

ملاحظة: عند وجود (does\do) نحذفها ونحول الفعل الذي يكون خلفها إلى التصريف الثاني:

“What **does** she work these days?”

Samir asked Alia what she **worked** those days.

ملاحظة: أما عند وجود (did) فنحذفها ونحول الفعل الذي يبقى إلى (had + V3):

“What **did** your wife buy from this mall?”

Ali asked Sohaib what his wife had bought from that mall.

ملاحظة: please / oh / well كلها تحذف

Examples

1- “How long **are** you going away for?”

She asked how long **we** were going away for.

2- “What is your problem?”

That man asked what my problem was.

Exercises 2:

1- “What are you talking about?”

Mike asked me

2- “Where is Amanda?”

Sam wanted to know

3- “Why is the sky blue?”

She asked me

4- “Why are you tired?”

My mother wondered

5- “Why do you leave your books on the sofa?”

Mum asked the children.....

- 6- "Where does the secretary keep the discs?"
The manager wanted to know.....
- 7- "Why are you in my office?"
The sales manager asked the salesmen.....
- 8- "Why are you in my cabin?"
The captain asked Jack.....
- 9- "Why have you skipped your lunch?"
John asked Mr. Collins.....
- 10- "What have you been doing in my car?"
The mail carrier asked Lora.....
- 11- "Where have you been playing soccer?"
The housekeeper asked the children.....
- 12- "When did you meet your lawyer?"
Hilda asked David.....
- 13- "Where did you find your raft?"
The detective asked the hikers.....
- 14- "Why did you buy two tickets?"
The head master asked Stan.....
- 15- "Why was your husband dancing Rhombi madly?"
Maria asked Elena.....
- 16- "How can I improve my skills?"
John wondered.....
- 17- "Why must we obey your silly instructions?"
The kids asked Natasha.....
- 18- "When are you going to send your copy?"
Ben asked Marta
- 19- "Why do they leave rubbish here?"
Andrea asked Stewart.....

20- “Why are you impounding my car?”

Brandon asked the traffic men.....

21- “How can you stand your being here all the time?”

Teddy asked the baker.....

22- “When did you hear the scream?”

The officer asked Donna.....

23- “How may I change my bad luck?”

Alfredo wondered.....

24- “How old are you?”

Helen asked me.....

25- (اول مرة 2014) “What do Jordanian people eat at wedding parties?”

John asked Kareem

B- Yes/No-questions:

(is\am\are\was\were\do\does\did\have\ has \ will\shall) هذا النوع من الأسئلة يبدأ بفعل مساعد

- عند نقل سؤال (yes/no) نقوم ب 4 خطوات
- 1- ضع كلمة (whether \ if) في خانة الحل.
 - 2- ضع بعدها الفاعل مع تحويله. وأنتبه عندما يكون الفاعل كلمتين أو أكثر (all the students) أو (my brother).
 - 3- ضع الفعل مع تحويله.
 - 4- أكمل الجملة إذا كان لها تكملة وحول علامة الاستفهام إلى نقطة.

ملاحظة: عند وجود (does\do) نحذفهما ونحول الفعل الذي يكون خلفهما إلى التصريف الثاني.

- "**Does** your mother **speak** two languages?"

Ali asked Samar if her mother **spoke** two languages.

ملاحظة: عند وجود (did) فنحذفها ونحول الفعل الذي يبقى إلى (had + V3).

- "**Did** your mother **speak** two languages?"

Ali asked Samar if her mother **had spoken** two languages.

Please / oh / well كلها تحذف

Examples:

1- "Is Ali happy?"

I wondered if Ali was happy.

2- "Was the girl playing in the yard?"

Hazem asked me if the girl had been playing in the yard.

3- "Will they accept my invitation?"

He asked me if they would accept his invitation.

4- "Do you need a pen?"

Annie asked me if I needed a pen.

5- "Are you hungry?"

Sid wanted to know if I was hungry.

Exercises 3:

1- "Did you enjoy your trip?"

Alia asked me

2- "Have you seen my grammar book?"

Nancy wanted to know

3- "Can you come to the party?"

David asked me

4- "Will you be in class tomorrow?"
Adam wanted to know.....

5- "Have you seen Mr. Abdullah?"
The boss asked Ali

6- "Do you know your way?"
The old man asked the stranger.....

7- "Does your daughter lend a helping hand?"
Mrs. Gibson asked Mrs. Green.....

8- "Do you spend your day in the gym?"
Karen asked Kevin

9- "Am I in my bedroom?"
George wondered.....

10- "Is your brother in your class?"
The girls asked Sarah.....

11- "Are you in my cabin?"
The captain asked Jack.....

12- "Am I repeating my words?"
The old woman wondered.....

13- "Have you recovered your investment?"
The judge asked the partners.....

14- "Have you restored your energy?"
The doctor asked Alice.....

15- "Has the postman brought my package?"
My father wanted to know.....

16- "Has your dad bought you a gift?"
Frank asked Mary.....

17- "Has your sister been talking on the phone for ages?"
Mr. Carson asked Mike.....

- 18- "Has my wife been shopping for Christmas all day?"
Mr. Walton wanted to know.....
- 19- "Did you eat your apple pies?"
Kate asked the girls.....
- 20- "Did Lara see the doctor?"
He wanted to know.....
- 21- "Did you shoot the fugitive?"
The investigator asked the officer
- 22- "Was your trip tiring?"
The travel agent asked Marta.....
- 23- "Will you do me a favour, dad?" مهم جداً
Sonia asked
- 24- "May I take your orders?"
The waiter asked the girls.....
- 25- " Are you going to send your copy?"
Ben asked Marta
- 26- "Is your teacher going to test you tomorrow?"
Edward asked Alice.....
- 27- "Will you drive me home?"
Andrea asked Stewart.....
Andrea asked Stewart.....
- 28- "Did you teach your daughter how to cook?"
Mr. Hopkins asked his wife.....
- 29- "Does the shopper charge the item to the credit card?"
Lauren wanted to know.....
- 30- "Were you in your lanes?"
The reporter asked the athletes.....
- 31- (2011)- "Can you check the prices of the goods?"
The manager asked Rashid

32- (2011)- “Can I use your pen?”

Anwar asked his friend.....

33- (2012)- “Can you speak any foreign language?”

Hatem asked Muna

34- (2012)- “Do your child need any special kind of food during the flight?”

The flight attendant asked Muna

35- (2015/w) “Is there a wireless network available in the library?”

Rakan asked Khalid

3- Reporting (Command\Request\Advice\Suggestion) Sentences

نقل جمل الوظائف اللغوية

في جمل الأمر / والطلب / والنصيحة نقوم بوضع (to) وبعدها الفعل المجرد في حال بدأت الجملة بفعل امر اي فعل مجرد غير منفي.

إذا بدأت الجملة ب (don't) نحولها إلى (not to).

إذا وجدت كلمة (please!) نحذفها.

إليك بعض الأفعال الناقلة لجمل الطلب والأمر:

(ask\beg\command\forbid\instruct\order\remind\request\tell\urge\warn\want)

Examples:

1- "**Do** your homework."

Ali ordered me to **do** my homework.

2- "Go out! I am tired."

He asked me to go out! He was tired.

3- "Don't waste your time."

My father advised me not to waste my time.

4- "Say hello to your mum."

She asked me to say hello to my mum.

في جمل الإقتراحات تتبع suggested ب فعل مضاف له ing

5- I think we can play football.

He suggested playing football. / He suggested that we could play football.

Exercise 4:

1- "Read your text silently."

The teacher told me.....

2- "Put your hands over your head."

The officer ordered Jason.....

3- "Don't eat your meals late."

The doctor advised Emma.....

4- "Please, let me see your gift."

Danny begged his sister.....

5- Mother: Put away your toys, Johnny.

Johnny's mother told him

6- Teacher: Everybody, please stand up.

The teacher asked

7- Examiner: Could you speak a bit louder?

The examiner asked me

8- "Let's go to the cinema."

He **suggested** going to the cinema.

He **suggested** that we should go to the cinema.

9- "I will pick you up at 3 pm."

Mr. Philips **promised** his daughter to

10- "I think you should lose some weight."

The coach **advised** Robert to.....

11- "You should not put ice on burns."

The nurse **advised** Mike

12- "If I were you, I would not smoke."

My grandfather advised me.....

13- "I would buy the cotton blouse if I were you."

Tina advised Anita

14- "You may read my diary."

Samantha allowed Lisa

ملاحظة : الكلمات التالية

(claim/demand/promise/threaten/remind/warn/admit/complain/deny/insist
on/suggest/explain/inform)

يمكن ان تتبع ب (that) ويصبح حلها مثل تحويل الجملة الخبرية العادية.

Exercise 5: What were the actual sentences?

1- She asked me if I'd got the time.

.....

2- He said he had slept for ten hours the previous night.

.....

3- Samantha allowed Liza to read her diary.

.....

4- (2014) Majed asked Saif what kind of books bookshops sold.

Majed: "....."

5- The officer asked Ali if he had any og kush.

The police officer to Jack "....."

6- My father told me not to waste my money.

"....."

7- Hani asked his mother if he could go out with his friends.

"....."

8- Zaid asked whether Omar wanted to go swimming with him.

"....."

4.0- The Causative

- هذه القاعدة تحدث عن الأشياء التي لا يستطيع الشخص القيام بها لوحده (بنفسه) مثلاً: لا تستطيع ان تقول (لقد أصلحت سيارتي) إلا في حال كنت تعمل في مجال ميكانيك السيارات. للتعبير عن هذه الحالة نستخدم القاعدة العامة:

HAVE + SOMETHING + DONE
Have + object + V3 (past participle)

وبهذا نعني اننا قد وكلنا احداً للقيام بشيء لنا. اود التذكير ان التصريف الثالث للفعل يحمل معناً مبنياً للمجهول ولكن الجملة ليست مبنيةً للمجهول، لأنها تحتوي على مبتدأ/فاعل.

هنا الشخص لم يقص شعره بنفسه بل قص شعره له (Leo had his hair cut. (He didn't cut it himself) - للحل نتبع اربع خطوات: 1- نضع الفاعل الاصلي للجملة كما هو. 2- نضع (have) او اي فعل من اخواتها مكان الفعل الرئيسي حسب الزمن الاصلي للجملة. 3- نضع المفعول به كما هو في الجملة الأصلية. ونضع الفعل الرئيسي في نهاية الجملة بالتصريف الثالث.

إليك جدول يوضح طريقة التحويل:

	Tense/Time	Regular Active Form	Causative Form
1	Present Simple	She cleans the house.	She has the house cleaned.
2	Present Continuous	She is cleaning the house.	She is having the house cleaned.
3	Present Perfect	She has cleaned the house.	She has had the house cleaned.
4	Present Perfect Cont.	She has been cleaning the house.	She has been having the house cleaned.
5	Past Simple	She cleaned the house.	She had the house cleaned.
6	Past Continuous	She was cleaning the house.	She was having the house cleaned.
7	Past Perfect	She had cleaned the house.	She had had the house cleaned.
8	Past Perfect Cont.	She had been cleaning the house.	She had been having the house cleaned.
9	Future Simple	She will clean the house.	She will have the house cleaned.
10	Future Continuous	She will be cleaning the house.	She will be having the house cleaned.
11	Infinitive	She should clean the house.	She should have the house cleaned.
12	-ing Form	She doesn't mind cleaning the house.	She doesn't mind having the house cleaned.

مثال آخر لتوضيح:

محمد أصلح السيارة. Mohammad fixed the car.
في حال ان محمد ليس أخصائي تصليح سيارات يجب عليه ان يقول
(Mohammad had the car fixed)
لاحظ الفعل (had) مطابق لزمن الجملة الأصلية المراد تحويلها فكلاهما في الزمن الماضي

- ملاحظة: يمكن استخدام الفعل (get) بدل الفعل (have) في الحالات غير الرسمية:
- I didn't wash my car myself, I had/got it washed by a professional dry-cleaner.

Exercise 1: Rewrite the following sentences giving similar meaning:

- إذا كانت جملة الحل بعد فاصلة يمكنك تحويل الأسماء إلى ضمائر.
- 1- My computer isn't working properly, I need to fix it as quick as possible.
- My computer isn't working properly, I need to.....
 - 2- The Smiths painted their house themselves. تحذف الكلمة الأخيرة لأنهم لم يقوموا بالفعل بأنفسهم.
- The Smiths.....
 - 3- Rami's tablet is lagging, he will repair it tomorrow. نضع مكان اسم الملكية ضمير ملكية.
- Rami
 - 4- She is cleaning the house.
She
 - 5- My teacher usually types his documents.
- My teacher
 - 6- Brides sometimes design their wedding parties.
- Brides
 - 7- A girl manicures my boss's nails twice a week .
- My boss
 - 8- Picasso painted my mother's portrait.
- My mother
 - 9- The dentist is going to fill my tooth next Monday.
- I
 - 10- Has anybody ever read your palm?
- Have you
 - 11- I'm going to pay someone to cut my grass.
- I'm going to.....
 - 12- I asked someone to fix my computer. (had)
I

Exercise 2: Complete the following sentences:

هكذا يكون النمط الوزاري:

- 1- Salma her hair every 3 months. (design)
- 2- The young girl is having her toyby her mother. (buy)
- 3- The teacher ordered Ali to do his homework by himself, but he willit.....
by his parents. (do)
- 4- My father didn't change the oil in his car, heit..... by the
mechanic. (change)
- 5- The car has been working a lot better since I it previously..... (service).
- 6- Your hair looks different. Have youit..... (cut)?
- 7- (2011)- Majed didn't repair his computer himself. He **had** it (repair)
- 8- (2012)- Did you plant the trees in your garden yourselves? No, we had them
..... (plant)
- 9- The Johnsons had their gardenand their lawn (weed \ mow)
- 10-(2015/w)- I didn't deliver the flowers by myself. I had them (deliver)
- 11- (2012)- Rawan didn't type the report herself. She had it (type)
- 12- (2014) Manal didn't buy her English dictionary. She had it (buy)
- 13- (2011)- He took the photos himself. He **didn't have** them (take)
- 14- (2011)- Do you like this photograph of our family? We **had** it by a
photographer (take)
- 15- (2015)- Instead of buying a new bicycle, why don't you have your old one (fix)
- 16- (book)- We had the computer because it had stopped working. (repair)

5.0- Verbs Followed with (to – inf /ing)

A- Verbs Followed by an Infinitive

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال عادة (أي ليس بالضرورة دائما) للكلام عن الأحداث التي ستتبع حدث الفعل الرئيسي في الجملة:
- The man **agreed to participate** in teaching English.
- نشعر هنا عزيزي الطالب/ة ان الموافقة حدثت لفعل سيحدث لاحقا الا وهو تدريس اللغة من قبل هذا الرجل الذي وافق الان.

Verbs Followed by an Infinitive				
agree	fail	prepare	consent	try
aim	forget	proceed	dare	use
appear	get	promise	decide	wait
arrange	happen	propose	deserve	want
ask	have	refuse	detest	wish
attempt	hesitate	remember	dislike	offer
be able	hope	say	expect	ought
beg	hurry	afford	long	plan
care	leap	stop	mean	manage
choose	leave	swear	neglect	seem

Examples:

- 1- She **agreed to speak** before the game.
- 2- Tom **agreed to help** me.

B- Verbs Followed by a Gerund (-ing form of the verb)

- عادةً ما نستخدم ال (gerund) عندما نتكلم عن حدث يحدث في نفس وقت وقوع الفعل أو قبل وقوعه:
- I **enjoy playing** basketball.
- هنا يقع الاستمتاع في نفس وقت لعب كرة السلة.

Verbs Followed by a Gerund		
admit	finish	recall
advise	forbid	report
appreciate	have	resent
avoid	imagine	resist
can't help	mind	resume
complete	miss	risk
consider	permit	spend (time)
delay	postpone	suggest
deny	practice	tolerate
dislike	quit	waste (time)
enjoy	escape	excuse

Examples:

- 1- They **enjoyed working** on the boat.
- 2- I **love swimmming** but I **hate jogging**.

C- Verbs followed with -ing or infinitive with the same meaning:

- هذه الأفعال تتبع ب (inf) أو (ing) ويكون لهما نفس المعنى:

begin / intend / like / start / hate / continue / love / prefer

Examples:

- 1- My brother **likes playing** the guitar.
- 2- I **prefer to read** historical novels. I **love getting** to know the characters.

D- Verbs followed with -ing or infinitive with different meaning:

- هذه الأفعال تتبع ب (inf) أو (ing) ولكن تعطي الجمل معان مختلفة:

forget / remember / stop / try

Examples:

- 1- She **stopped talking** when she saw the beautiful view. توقفت عن الكلام.
- 2- We **stopped to check** our route on the map. توقفنا للتأكد من.

Exercise 1: Put the verb into the correct form:

1. I don't fancy (go) out tonight.
2. She avoided (tell) him about her plans.
3. I would like (come) to the party with you.
4. He enjoys (have) a bath in the evening.
5. She kept (talk) during the film.
6. I am learning (speak) English.
7. Do you mind (give) me a hand?
8. She helped me (carry) my suitcases.
9. I've finished (cook). Come and eat!
10. He decided (study) Biology.
11. I dislike (wait).
12. He asked (come) with us.
13. I promise (help) you tomorrow.
14. We discussed (go) to the cinema, but in the end we stayed at home.
15. She agreed (bring) the pudding.
16. I don't recommend (take) the bus, it takes forever!
17. We hope (visit) Amsterdam next month.
18. She suggested (go) to the museum.
19. They plan (start) college in the autumn.
20. I don't want (leave) yet.
21. (book)- We had the computer repaired because it had stopped (work)
22. I want **to get / getting** a tablet, but I can't afford **to buy / buying** one at the moment.

6.0- Explaining Possibilities

- لتعبير عن إحصالية حدوث شيء في الماضي، فنكون اما:

متأكدين من حدوث الفعل (must)	متأكدين من عدم حدوث الفعل وللتعبير عن الإندهاش وعدم تصديق شيء (can't/couldn't)	غير متأكدين من حدوث الفعل أو للتحدث عن احتمالية في الماضي (might / could)
- في الجملة الأصلية يكون هناك إيحاء بأن الشيء حقيقي وصحيح لذلك يوجد في جملة السؤال: sure/certain	- يكون في جملة السؤال دليل على ان المتكلم متأكد من عدم حدوث شيء أو انه لا يصدق حدوثه أو مندهش من حدوثه: sure.....not certainnot	- يكون في الجملة دلالة على اننا غير متأكدين من حدوث الشيء: unsure / uncertain likely / probable / possible perhaps / suppose / if there is a chance / maybe
جملة مضارة V1 must + have + V3 ماضية	مضارة V1 can't + have + V3 ماضية	مضارة V1 might + have + V3 ماضية
- I am sure he forgot about our appointment today. He must have forgotten about our appointment today. - I am sure it is hot outside. It must be hot outside.	- I am sure Ali didn't come. Ali can't have come. - I am sure she didn't finish the project. - She couldn't have finished the project	- I am unsure whether a car broke down on the road. - A car might have broken down on the road.

Examples:

لاحظ في المثال الأول (الوزاري) الجملة تحتوي على قسمين القسم الثاني فيه الكلمة الدالة (unsure) والتي جعلتنا نستخدم (might) وتبين لك عزيزي الطالب ان الجملة ذاتها هي في الزمن المضارع التام لذلك استخدمنا (have+V3) في جملة الحل.

ملاحظة: الجملة في الزمن الماضي أو الماضي التام، نستخدم (must/can't/might have+V3) في الحل.

1- (2014/S)- Ahmad's class starts at 8:45 and he is not here yet. I am **unsure** whether he **has missed** the bus or not. (might have)

- Ahmad **might have missed** the bus.

لاحظ اننا استخدمنا اسم احمد وليس الضمير لان الجمل عادة ما تبدأ بمبتدأ اسم لكي يتم التعرف على المنوي التكلم عنه.

2- (2015/S)- The twins have guilty expressions on their faces, I am almost sure they have done something naughty. (must have)

-The twins **must have done** something naughty.

لاحظ استخدمنا الفعل (done) مكان الفعل (V3) في القاعدة ولاحظ ان الوزارة اعطتك الفعل جاهز بالتصريف الثالث ف يخلف عليهم.

3- She speaks Chinese. I am unsure whether she has lived in China. (might have)

- She might have lived in china.

لاحظ: لا تستخدم (or not) في جمل ال (might) لان الكلمة بعد ذاتها تحمل معنى بحدوث الشيء أو عدمه، فكر بالانجليزي تفكرش بالعربي.

Exercise 1: Write sentences explaining possibilities using the suitable modal verbs.

1- (2014/S)- Salma's plants are dead. I am almost sure she hasn't watered them. (can't have)
Salma

2-(2014/W) The ground is wet here. There was almost certainly a lake once. (must have)
.....

3- (2014/W) Those people are very thin, that's why I'm certain they haven't eaten much food lately. (can't have)
.....

4- My brother has been working for two hours. I'm **sure** he **was** very excited. (must have)
My brother.....

5- My father is 80 years old, he has been working all morning, I am sure he wasn't tired.
- My father

6- (2015/S)- Rakan spent a month in a hospital before he was able to walk. I am almost **sure** that it wasn't an easy situation for him. حط الفعل من عندك
.....

7- That child is really talented. I am sure his parents are proud of him.

That child's parents

The parents

8- It's only 10 o'clock. I am sure he is not at home.

He

9- That dress looks expensive. I am sure it costs a fortune.

That dress

10- I am sure that the girl you saw today was not Carla. She is away on holiday.

The girl

11- (book)- Mahmoud was walking home when the rain started. It was very heavy, so he
..... very wet. (must/get)

12- Perhaps Issa's phone is broken. (might)

- Issa's

13- Mahmoud was walking home when the rain started. **(must have got / can't have got)**

It was very heavy, so hevery wet.

Exercise 2: Write sentences which explain possibilities of the following situations:

1- He must earn quite a lot of money to be able to afford that car.

The speaker is

2- It can't be easy designing and building bridges, they're complicated structures.

I am

3- She might be French; she has a strong accent.

I am

4- They **must** have come from somewhere hot like Africa.

- The speaker is

5- They **can't** have finished their lunch already, they only started eating five minutes ago.

- The speaker is

6- Ali's not usually this late, he **might** have got stuck in heavy traffic.

- The speaker is

7- Alia was late, she can't have done her homework.

- I am **sure** that Alia

8- It can't be an interesting place to work.

The man feels

9. Aqaba **must be** an interesting place to live.

The speaker is

7.0- Conditional Clauses (If Clauses) الجمل الشرطية

- الجملة الشرطية: هي عبارة عن جملة يكون الحدث في جملة الشرط (If clause) شرطاً لحدوث حدث آخر في جواب الشرط (main clause).

- If I eat, I will get fat.

- تقسم الجملة الشرطية إلى عبارتين وهما:

1- جملة الشرط (if clause): وهي الجملة التي تحتوي على (if) أو (unless) أو غيرها. وهي جملة غير مستقلة أي لا تأتي وحيدة ولو أتت هذه الجملة وحيدة يكون المعنى ناقص.

- If you study harder, هذه العبارة غير مفيدة لأنها غير مكتملة

2- جواب الشرط (main clause): وهي الشق الآخر من الجملة ويجب أن تحتوي على فعل من أفعال (modals) في النوع الأول والثاني والثالث من الجمل الشرطية. ولا يجب أن تحتوي على أي من أفعال (modals) في النوع صفر. وهي جملة مستقلة مفيدة بحد ذاتها.

- you will probably pass easily. هذا الجزء مفيد سواء جاء مستقل أو جاء مع الجملة السابقة

- جملة (if) تكون على شكلين:

If you study harder, you will pass.

لاحظ وجود (if) في بداية الجملة والفاصلة في الوسط.

- والشكل الثاني:

You will pass if you study harder.

لاحظ وجود (if) في وسط الجملة مع عدم وجود فاصلة والحرف في (if) صغير.

1- (الجملة الشرطية الحالة صفر)	
Type	The Zero Conditional
Structure	If + Present Simple, Present Simple نستخدم الزمن المضارع البسيط في كلا الطرفين من الجملة. هنا يمكن استخدام (when) بدل (if) If + V1 (s/es) , V1 (s/es).
Use	- to describe something that always happens. - the inevitable consequence after a certain action or event. - نستخدم هذه القاعدة للكلام عن الأشياء التي تحدث دائماً كنتيجة لتحقيق شرط الجملة. كالحقائق العلمية والحالات الدائمة والعامة.
Examples	- If plants don't get enough sunlight, they die. - Water turns to ice if the temperature falls below zero.

2- (الجملة الشرطية الحالة الأولى)	
Type	The First Conditional
Structure	If + Present Simple, will (Modals) + V1 نستخدم في هذه الحالة من الجمل الشرطية المضارع البسيط في جملة الشرط (if) والمستقبل البسيط في جواب الشرط.
Use	to describe a future outcome of a certain future action or event. وهنا نتحدث عن ناتج مستقبلي لحدث معين مستقبلي أو مضارع، الشرط ممكن حدوثه في المستقبل
Examples	If you get an interview for a job, you will need to show real enthusiasm.

3- (الجملة الشرطية الحالة الثانية)	
Type	The Second Conditional
Structure	If + Past Simple, would + V1 نستخدم في هذه الحالة الشرطية الماضي البسيط في جملة الشرط (if) و (would) في جواب الشرط.
Use	- نستخدم هذه الحالة للكلام عن الأحداث التي ليست من المتوقع ان تحدث في المستقبل. - If I met the Queen of England, I would say hello. - للكلام عن الأحلام او التخيلات في المستقبل. - She would travel all over the world if she were rich. - للكلام عن شيء في المضارع لكن هو ليس حقيقي او صحيح مثل الأمنيات و النصائح. - If I were you, I wouldn't go out with that man.
Examples	- If I won the lottery, I would buy a big house. - If I were you, I wouldn't go out with that man.

4- (الجملة الشرطية الحالة الثالثة)	
Type	The Third Conditional (The Imaginary Past)
Structure	If + Past Perfect, { would have could have might have } + V3 - نستخدم الماضي التام في جملة الشرط و (would have/could have/might have + V3) في جواب الشرط.
Use	to imagine past and impossible situations which did not happen. - نستخدمه لتخيل أحداث مستحيلة لم تحدث في الماضي ، وتخيّل نتائج هذه الأحداث. الشرط غير ممكن/مستحيل حدوثه في الماضي
Examples	- If I had stayed at home that day, I would have missed the celebration. - جملة الشرط تصف حدث لم يحدث وجواب الشرط يصف حدثاً لم يحدث. تعني هذه الجملة ان الشخص حضر الإحتفال. - I wouldn't have gone to the library if my friend hadn't invited me. - هنا تم دعوة المتكلم من قبل صديقة وذهبا للمكتبة، فهو يقول لو ان صديقي لم يدعني للمكتبة لما كنت ذهبت اي ان كل جملته خيالية ولم يحدث انه لم تتم دعوته. - If I'd studied harder, I'd have passed the exam. - هنا لم يدرس ولم ينجح ويقول لو انني درست لنجحت وكلا جملة الشرط وجوابها خياليتين لم تحدثا.
Notes	- We use (could have/might have + V3) when we are less sure of the result of the impossible past situation. - في هذه القاعدة، نستخدم (could have/might have + V3) عندما نكون ليسوا متأكدين بالكامل من نتيجة حدث مستحيل في الماضي. If I had prepared better for the competition, I might have won the first prize. - يقول الكاتب هنا: لو انني تمرنت بشكل افضل للمنافسة (وهذا لم يحدث ومن المستحيل ان يحدث الآن) لكان من الممكن ان افوز بالجائزة الأولى (هو ليس متأكد من فوزه بالجائزة الأولى بدليل (might)) - If I had slept better before the exam, I could have concentrated better. - If I'd gone to a different school, I might not have studied French. I could have taken English.

No	Conjunction	المعنى بالعربي
1-	if	إذا
2-	when	عندما (الشرطية)
3-	provided that	على شرط / بشرط
4-	as long as	إذا / طالما
5-	unless	إذا لم
6-	even if	حتى لو

- I'll buy the book **(if/provided that/as long as)** it isn't too expensive.

- لن اشترية **إذا** كان غالي الثمن.

- I'll buy it unless it's expensive.

- سأشترية **إذا لم** يكن غالي الثمن.

- I'll buy it **even if** it's expensive.

- سأشترية **حتى لو** كان غالي الثمن.

Exercise 1: Complete the Conditional Sentences by putting the verbs into the correct form.

- 1- If they (have) time at the weekend, they will come to see us.
- 2- If the team train well, they (get) high scores.
- 3- If we (know) about your problem, we would have helped you.
- 4- I leave if she (come) to this place.
- 5- If we sneak out quietly, nobody (notice) us.
- 6- We (arrive) earlier if we had not missed the bus.
- 7- Okay, I (get) the popcorn if you buy the drinks.
- 8- She (go) out with you if you had only asked her.
- 9- I would not have read your diary if you (not hide) it in such an obvious place.

Exercise 2: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1- When you at the station next Saturday, we there to meet you. (arrive/be)
- 2- Nasser out with us tomorrow unless he help his father. (come/have to)
- 3- I you with your homework, as long as you me with mine! (help/help)
- 4- Provided that it, we a picnic next week. (not rain/have)
- 5- If you the prize, how you the money? (win/spend)
- 6 Even if Omar his driving test this afternoon, he his own car. (pass/not have)

Exercise 3: Rewrite the following sentences so that they mean the same as the sentence before each of them.

- 1- Perhaps it will snow tomorrow so we may not go out.

If

2- It is possible that I will buy the butter and flour tomorrow so I may make a cake.

If

3- It is quite probable that Ahmad will come tonight so we may play chess.

If

4- I advised you not to tell Lina the bad news.

If I

5- I advise you to apply for that job.

If I

6- Ahmad won't go to London, so he won't buy me a present.

If Ahmad

7- I am not rich, so I can't buy a big house.

If I

8- Mona didn't study for the exam last week so she failed.

If

9- Sami lost the match because he didn't practice hard.

If

10- Rania arrived late because she came by bus.

If

11- People who didn't work hard usually don't achieve anything in life.

Unless

12- If Ahmad gets the tickets, we will go to the concert.

Unless

13- If nobody helps me, I will not finish the work today.

Unless

14- Unless you drive slowly, you will make an accident.

If

15- Nader won't get a scholarship unless he gets high grades.

If

Exercise 24: Correct the verbs between brackets to give useful grammatically correct sentences:

- 1- If people too much, they get fat. (eat)
- 2- If it rains, I to the park. (go/not)
- 3- If I met the Queen of England, I hello. (say)
- 4- If she , she would have passed the exam. (study)
- 5- If you a fire, you burned. (touch / get)

- 6- If I study today, I to the party tonight. (go)
- 7- She would travel all over the world if she rich. (be)
- 8- If I hadn't eaten so much, I sick. (not/feel)
- 9- People die if they (not/eat)
- 10- If I enough money, I'll buy some new shoes. (have)

- 11- She would pass the exam if she ever (study)
- 12- If we a taxi, we wouldn't have missed the plane. (take)
- 13- You water if you hydrogen and oxygen. (get / mix)
- 14- She'll be late if the train delayed. (be)
- 15- If I his number, I would call him. (have)

- 16- She wouldn't have been tired if she to bed earlier. (go)
- 17- Snakes if they are scared. (bite)
- 18- She'll miss the bus if she soon. (not / leave)
- 19- She a teacher if she had gone to university. (become)
- 20- If babies are hungry, they (cry)

- 21- If I see her, I'll her. (tell)
- 22- He would have been on time for the interview if he the house at nine. (leave)
- 23- I (have got) the job if I (have) some experience.
- 24- If you (do) the course, you (have) enough experience to apply for the job.
- 25- (2016) If a city everything and doesn't throw anything away, it is zero waste. (recycle)

- 26- If you **will play / play** computer games all day, you won't have time to study.
- 27- If Ali **had / has** his own computer, he **wouldn't / doesn't** need to use his friend's computer.
- 28- I think you **should** send a text message. (would)
If
- 29- Press that button to make the picture move. (moves)
If you

عزيزي: سامحني على الإطالة ، أعددت هذه المادة لأجلك لوجه الله تعالى.
مع كل الحب

Writing: Discursive Essay (المقالة الإستطردائية)

- كتابة المقالات تكون على النحو التالي :

1-العنوان: ضع عنواناً للمقال وحاول ان تستنبطه من السؤال. لأن السؤال يحتوي على الموضوع وغالباً في السطر الأول.

2- الفقرة الأولى (المقدمة): استخدم أول سطر من السؤال كجملة بادئها لأنها تحتوي صلب الموضوع وتحتوي أيضاً على الجملة المفتاحية. **تحذير:** لاتقم بنسخها بل اعمل بعض التغييرات حتى لو كانت خفيفة. اضع جملة او جملتين لتزيد جمال الفقرة (المقدمة) ولتكون بمثابة انطلاقة لكتابت جسم المقالة. اهد هذه الجملة توضح ما ستكتبه.

3- الفقرة الثانية (العرض): ابدأ بالمطلوب واحداً واحداً والمطالبات تبدأ من بعد عبارة (Write an essay about) وارجع للسؤال عدة مرات اثناء الكتابة حتى لا تتشتت. ضع تفاصيل، تواريخ، إضافات واي معلومات تراها مناسبة.

4- الفقرة الأخيرة (الخاتمة): أختتم مقالتي بخاتمة جيدة تلخص اغلب ما ذكرت تقريباً وتعبر فيها عن رأيك وتتوجه فيها بسؤال ونصيحة. مثال نموذجي من كتاب الوزارة على مثل هذه المقالات ارجو عدم اهماله:

The advantages and disadvantages of online shopping

Most people now use the Internet on computers, smartphones and tablets to do a variety of tasks. For many people, these tasks include online shopping. From shopping for groceries to all kinds of clothes shopping, consumers are finding this the easiest way to get what they need, literally at the touch of a button. However, there are numerous and important disadvantages to shopping in this way.

Although using the Internet to shop is usually fairly easy, and there is often greater variety available, it is always a risk because you cannot try on or see in detail the item you wish to buy. In fact, the immediate 'convenience' of shopping in this way can end up being an inconvenience if the item is faulty or does not fit, or is just not what the customer wanted. It is true that the prices are better when you shop online, but, while it might be cheaper, there is a distinct disadvantage because you have to wait for the delivery of the purchases. Some people might prefer not to have any personal contact while shopping online, but it can save time in the end since there are always assistants to help with queries you might have during the transaction. In addition to this, there is the issue of Internet payment security; however, recently this has improved a lot.

The Internet has indeed given us a wider choice as consumers, as well as made some aspects of shopping more pleasant and convenient. However, it is nearly impossible, in my opinion, to forget the disadvantages we experience from time to time, since these can and do influence the way in which we choose to shop.

ملاحظات هامة وجيدة:

- 1- اترك فراغ بين كل فقرة رئيسية اي بعد المقدمة وبين العرض والخاتمة. و اترك قدر اصبع فراغ في بداية كل فقرة ايضاً.
- 2- استخدم ادوات الترقيم (punctuations) بشكل صحيح: مثلاً النقطة (full stop.) عند انتهاء الفكرة وفي نهاية الفقرات، الفاصلة (comma ,,) بين الافكار المترابطة او القريبية وبين التعداد ، النقاط المتعادمة او ما يسمى نقطتنا التفصيل (colon ::::) وتستخدم عند التفصيل او التعداد. علامة التعجب (!!! exclamation mark) بعد التعجب والسؤال (question mark ???) بعد السؤال. الخ
- 3- استخدم الأزمنة الصحيحة والتي تعلمتها في هذه الوحدة، مثلاً استخدم المضارع البسيط للكلام عن الاشياء التي تحدث في الوقت الحاضر والماضي للأشياء التي حدثت في الماضي وهكذا...
- 4- لا تنسى ان تجعل الحرف الأول كبير في الحالات التالية: اسم العلم مثل اسماء الاشخاص والدول ، الكلمات في اول الفقرات والكلمات بعد النقطة وعلامة الاستفهام وعلامة التعجب.
- 5- استخدم ظروف مثل (firstly/secondly/finally/however/therefore/consequently).
- 6- ركز على فكرة في كل فقرة واستخدم جمل قصيرة سهلة واستخدم كلمات تعرفها.
- 7- تأكد من الأخطاء الإملائية.

Exercise 1: The internet is very useful in our lives, actually we cannot live without it. Write a three paragraph essay of at least 200 words discussing the advantages and disadvantages of the internet.

Blank lined paper with horizontal ruling lines and a large, faint watermark reading "السلامة" (Safety) diagonally across the page.

Exercise 2: Modern technology is known to be very useful these days. Basically, it makes our lives easier and more comfortable. Write an essay about the way you and your family utilize (use) modern technology. Use new vocabulary to describe this.

Writing skills: Coherence

To make your essay 'flow' so that it is clear to your audience, you need to link your ideas:

Indicating consequence:

In this way, technology makes communication more convenient.

As a consequence, family members who are away from home can communicate well with their loved ones.

Therefore, people can communicate more quickly and conveniently.

Indicating opposition:

However, social media is time-consuming. / Whereas, the more quickly and conveniently we communicate, the more likely it is that there will be misunderstandings.

Despite the recent advances in technology, it is still unreliable and very inconvenient.

Handwriting practice lines with a large, faint watermark reading "أبجد" (Abjad) diagonally across the page.

أحمد الأحمد

أحمد الأحمد

Handwriting practice lines with a large, faint watermark reading "أبجد" (Abjad) diagonally across the page.

أهلاً وسهلاً بكم في هذا القسم،
حيث سنقدم لكم مجموعة متنوعة من
التمارين والأنشطة التعليمية
التي تهدف إلى تعزيز مهاراتكم
اللغوية والفهمية. نأمل أن تجدوا
هذه الموارد مفيدة وممتعة.

Unit One Answers

Ex 1: World Wide Web / pc/ smartphone.

Ex2: 1- It was more than 2000 years old.

2- Travelling and heating homes.

3- It was a metal machine found on the seabed in Greece.

4- In the 1940s, technology had developed enough for inventors to make the first generation of modern computers.

5- It took 25 minutes to complete one calculation.

6- The invention of the first PC (personal computer) in 1974 CE.

7- People might play games in their free time, send emails or do their work using these fantastic devices.

8- A British scientist called Tim Berners-Lee developed the World Wide Web.

9- Smartphones are devices that look like a regular cellphone but can do more than calling and sending messages, they can work almost like computers

10-

pronoun	refer to (reference) antecedent
it	a computer
that	a metal machine
this	a metal machine
it	one such model
it	one such model
it	the first computer program
their	most people
which	watches
that	glasses

11- Life in 2050 will probably be deeply affected by technology in Jordan and worldwide. People will fly their jet cars and they will be able to travel in time machines to other places within seconds. They will also use a kind of computer chips to be put under their skin and do all the communication without holding mobile phones.

12- One such model was so large, it needed a room that was 167 square metres to accommodate it.

13- In 1958 CE, the computer chip was developed. The first computer game was produced in 1962 CE, followed two years later by the computer mouse. In 1971 CE, the floppy disk was invented. The first PC (personal computer) was produced in 1974 CE,

14- People will depend on computers in doing everything, as a result of that we will suffer from unemployment and machines might control our lives although they could make it easier and comfortable. I don't agree with the article that much.

15- I don't agree that being dependent on technology is a positive thing, it is negative because we might lose control.

16- Communication technology is the most useful these days because it makes people communicate easily.

17- The advantages of having laptops, tablet computers and smartphones are doing what you want easily and easily communicate with others. You can also play computer games and visit websites. The disadvantages are that you may waste your time as many people do and have diseases related to using these devices for a long time.

18- Life without computers would be harder and everything should be done manually just exactly as what our grandfathers and grandmothers used to live.

19- PC.

Ex3: 1- blog 2- tablet computer 3- exchange emails شغل مخك صح الترتيب اختلف

Ex4: 1- We can use digital information in different ways to educate people, such ways are to make them listen to live conversations using computers or using whiteboards to show movies.

2- No, I don't think that computers will one day replace the regular book because learners want something touchable to read and write. Education in a traditional process and sometimes it needs some traditional tools such as the book.

3- We should make learning more interesting by utilizing technology and make the situation more challenging.

4- Teachers can show websites on the board in front of the class. Teachers can then use the internet to show educational programmes, play educational games, music, recordings of languages.

5- Students can use the tablets to do tasks such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams. Tablets are ideal for pair and group work.

6- It is much like an online diary on which students can write about their own lives as if they were someone famous.

7- Some students like to send messages that are under 140 letters for anyone to read.

8- Teachers can ask students to email what they have learnt to students of a similar age at another school. They could even email students in another country. As a result, students can then share information and help each other with tasks.

9- A camera.

10- I can search the answers for the hard questions, find more information about a lesson and send emails to my friends asking them for help.

11- The teacher should be there to monitor the students and to see what's happening.

12-

pronoun /word	refer to / antecedent
they	Young people
their	Teachers
their/ They	students
which	social media
they	students
who	students
them	students in England
they	Students

them	computers
their	Students
they	Students

13- إجابات مقترحة مختصرة

Share: to give someone something you own.

Compare: to try to find the differences between things.

Create: make.

Contribute: share.

Research: try to find.

Present: give

Monitor: watch and guide.

find out: search.

give a talk to: speak loudly in front of many people.

talk to: to speak to someone

show: act or display.

send photos: give someone photos over email or something.

Other suggested answers إجابات كتاب المعلم

1 share ideas: to give your ideas to another person or to a group.

- compare ideas: where two or more people consider how their ideas are similar or different.

2- create a website: to construct a website that currently does not exist

- contribute to a website: offer your writing and work to the website

3- research information: to use a variety of sources to find the information you need.

- present information: to give the results of your research in a presentation.

4- monitor what is happening: you know what is happening and you are following the developments.

- find out what is happening: you don't know what is happening and you want to discover it.

5- give a talk to people: you have prepared a speech and you are giving this speech to a group of people who are expecting it

- talk to people: an informal discussion.

6- show photos: you show people photos that you have in person.

- send photos: you send photos to someone over the Internet or by post

14- Web pages are different from regular books in that they are electronic and you may need access to the internet to run one but regular books are not that hard to use, just open the book and all the fun starts.

15- Yes, some pages are well organized, so it becomes so easy for you to find out your information.

16- A good website should be well organized, neat and useful.

17- It helps in building (making/creating) a website.

18- You need a web hosting to host (put/accommodate) your website.

19- A domain name is the address you enter in the navigation bar to find your website. In other words, it is the website name or address, for example "www.facebook.com".

20- Starting a website is not that expensive these days, for 50JDs you can start one.

21- No, I don't agree with such claim because there are people in far-away places who attend online schools and meet with their teachers once or twice a month, such schools are available in Australia because it is a very big country.

Ex5: 1- privacy settings. 2- filter. 3- identity fraud. 4- sat nav system.

Ex6: 1- The Internet of Things is a system which can help you control everything in your life. As an example, your TV can download your favourite TV shows in case you are not there and it helps you watch these missing shows later.

2-communicate/tells.

3- Your sofa will tell you when you need to stand up and get some exercise.

4- Many people.

5- Many people are excited because it is a dream is coming true. their lives will be easier and more comfortable. However, others are not so sure because they want to keep control of their own lives and their own things. They wonder what would happen if criminals managed to access their passwords and security settings. They claim that the dream could easily become a nightmare.

6- For me, the Internet of Things is so exciting because it can make my life easier, I don't have to worry because people will be easily able to control their lives easily.

7- The internet connects people, devices and machines.

8- Satellite navigation system. It is a system of computers and satellites, used in cars and other places that tells you where something is, where you are or how to get to a place.

9- Computers often communicate with each other; for example, your TV automatically downloads your favourite TV show, or your 'sat nav' system tells you where you are.

10- Maybe because they are old-fashioned or they are always worried about new and modern technology.

11- I both agree and disagree, I would like to have somethings done for me by computers but also I would like to control other things. So, I think it is relevant.

12-

Pronoun	Reference
it	the internet
that	connecting people
it	more milk/milk
it	the weather / non-referential
them / others / they / their	Many people

Grammar Answers

1.1- Simple Present

Ex1: 1- speak 2-Do Speak 3- don't speak 4- don't play 5-doesn't play 6-doesn't play 7- leaves 8-doesn't leave 9-does....leave 10- doesn't ... forget 11- forgets 12- circles.

Ex2: 1-is 2-am 3-isn't 4- are not (aren't)

Ex3: 1- You do not (don't) speak 2- They don't play 3- She does not play.....

Ex4: 1- Do you speak..... 2- Do they play tennis..... 3- Does she play.....

1.2- Present Continuous

Ex1: 1- is rising 2- am studying 3- is helping 4- am not going 5- am talking 6- are ... doing 7- am not doing 8- is rising 9- are having 10- is not going 11- are visiting 12- love

Ex2: 1- The population of China isn't rising ... 2- I am not studying ... 3- Jim is not helping ... 4 – I am not going..

Ex3: 1- Is the ..of China rising ... 2- Am I studying (are you).... 3- Is Jim helping... 4- Am I going (are you)

1.3- Present Perfect:

Ex1: 1- have seen 2- have met 3- have been 4- have travelled 5- have not travelled 6- Have ... read 7- has ... climbed 8-A-has...been B- has ... been 9- has ... started 10- has passed 11- have ... built 12- have ... moved 13- Have met 14- have grown 15- has/have become 16- has ... improved 17- has taken 18- have...ordered.

Ex2: 1- People haven't travelled.... 2- I haven't been 3- James has not finished 4- I have not seen ...

Ex3: 1- Have people travelled.... 2- Have (I/you) been ... 3- Hasn't James finished... 4- Have (I/you) seen...

1.4- Present Perfect Continuous:

Ex1: 1- has been studying 2- have been interviewing 3- have been talking 4- has been working 5- has been writing (has written) 6- Has... been working 7- hasn't been working 8- has been doing 9- been sleeping 10- have ... been doing 11- has been teaching 12- been talking 13- not been sleeping 14- have been looking 15- have been waiting 16- has been walking 17- been working.

Ex2: 1- They have not been 2- James has not been 3- She has not been 4- Lisa and I have not

Ex3: 1- Have there been ... 2- Has James been ... 3- Has she been ... 4- Have Lisa and (I/you) been...

Ex4: 1- for 2- since 3- for 4- for 5- for 6- for

1.5- Past Simple:

Ex1: 1- was 2- were 3- was 4- was 5- was 6- were

Ex2: 1- collected 2- jumped 3- played 4- tested 5- visited 6- washed 7- were 8- had 9- bought 10- started 11- sang / talked 12- retired 13- had.

Ex3: 1- They didn't collect... 2- You didn't jump... 3- Albert did not play ... 4- The teacher didn't test ... 5- Fiona did not visit ... 6- He didn't wash....

Ex4: Did they collect ...? 2- Did you jump ...? 3- Did Albert play (What did Albert play)? 4- Did the teacher test..? 5- Did Fiona visit...? 6- Did he wash ..?

1.6- Past Continuous

Ex1: 1- were studying 2- was writing 3- was not studying 4- was watching 5- was not watching 6- was writing 7- were having 8- were ... doing 9- was listening 10- were not listening 11- was sleeping 12- was waiting.

Ex2: 1- The boy wasn't walking... 2- Thomas was (not) working, and I was (not) watching him. 3- They were not eating... 4- She wasn't always...

Ex3: 1- Were you writing the email when the computer suddenly went off? 2- Were you eating dinner last night at 6PM? 3- Were you still driving through the dessert at midnight?

1.7- Past Perfect

Ex1: 1- had studied 2- Had...studied 3- had not studied 4- had Been 5- had been 6- had visited 7- had ... seen 8- had lost 9- had not swum 10- had...flown 11- had worked 12- had saved

13- went. 14- Before Tala went to Britain to study Medicine, she had taken three English courses in the British Council.

Ex2: 1- Toney didn't know the Istanbul because he had never visited it. 2- You hadn't previously studied ...

Ex3: 1- Had she visited her Japanese relatives before she moved?

2- Had she saved the changes on the documents before the computer crashed?

1.8/9- The Future with "will" and "going to":

Ex1: 1- will go 2- am going to visit 3- will have 4- am going to fly 5- will get 6- is going to write 7- will get 8- will not score (won't score) 9- will you 10- are going to visit.

Ex2: 1- 's going to take 2- will stay 3- will have 4- 's going to miss 5- 's going to do 6- will tell.

Ex3: 1- have been using 2- were invented 3- bought 4- was produced 5- had sold 6- are sold 7- is estimated 8- will expand 9- are buying 10- will be.

Ex4: 1- use/are using 2- have / developed 3- have been using 4- was 5- had developed 6- will happen 7- see.

Ex5: 1- said 2- needed 3- was 4- has been 5- have 6- carry 7- wear 8- will attach.

Ex6: 1- have 2- use 3- come; 'm staying; will return 4- doing 5- was writing; switched 6- going to rain 7- Mohammad had checked his emails before he started work.

2.1/2- Passive and Active:

Ex1: 1- English is spoken as a second language (by people) all over the world (by people).

2- Cars which have problems are mended by a mechanic.

3- The dinner is served (by them) whenever they are visited (by us).

4- The food hadn't been touched before my dad came. (The dinner had been touched by no one before my dad came.)

5- The postcard hasn't been written by Mary yet.

6- That pie wasn't made by Alice. 8- Is the door being fixed by Tom? 9- Many plays were written by Shakespeare?

10- Ann will be invited to the party by Bill. 11- The farmer's wagon was being pulled by two horses.

13- Dr. Khalid's theory is agreed with by me. 14- The medicine must be taken on time by her.

15- Restrictive laws should have been introduced by the government.

16- His homework can't have been finished, He only started five minutes ago.

17- Big fish might have been caught by the fisherman. 18- My watch will have been mended by them by next week.

19- All the questions must have been answered by the students. 20- The plants must be watered in order to grow.

21- The historical sites must be saved by the government.

22- Large areas of land could be flooded when the Three Gorges Dam was being built.

23- Working in the dam can't be started until the whole tribe move.

24- The violin wasn't played by her. 25- The violin cannot be played by her.

27- Old computers are not bought by us in this company. 28- The computer may not be bought by me.

29- May the computer be bought by me?

30- Chess might be played by guests.

31- My missing laptop has been found.

- 32- The test-taking strategies must be learnt by you.
- 33- The test-taking strategies must not be learned by you.
- 34- The examination ought to be taken by them.
- 35- The natural resources must be saved by everyone.
- 36- The new highway is going to be designed by the engineers next month.
- 37- That smoking is dangerous is known by everyone.
- 38- were written / typed.
- 39- been built
- 40- Spanish is spoken in most South American countries, but in Brazil, Portuguese is spoken.
- 41- I was taught to read by my mother.
- 42- Fifty years ago, smartphones hadn't been invented.
- 43- Our exams have already been marked by our teacher, and now they are being checked.
- 44- Some books that were written 200 years ago have just been discovered.
- 45- 1- is used 2- is related 3- has/have been researched 4- was published 5- was hoped 6- had been carried out 7- is being done.
- 46- Enough money has been saved to fund our university courses.
- 47- are translated

3.0- Reported Speech

Ex1: 1- Toney said that many computers have filters which stopped people seeing certain websites.

- 2- Nour told Badria that she had some questions for her.
- 3- Sally said that if they shared information on social media with their friends, it might be accessed by other people, too.
- 4- Sami said that he had lived in Amman for six years.
- 5- Helen said that her brother stole her dolls.
- 6- Huda told me that she had bought all the ingredients for a chocolate cake the previous day.
- 7- The students said that in social media, you should only connect to people you know (knew) well.
- 8- Tariq said that he really had enjoyed the book that he had finished that morning.
- 9- Robert said that they would later give their dear listeners information about websites where they could find more advice on internet safety.
- 10- Hussain said that his favourite subject that year was Chemistry.
- 11- Ali admitted that his friend was with him.
- 12- Brain said that he was working on his project.
- 13- The employees said that they were having their snacks at that time.
- 14- Farida said that their teacher had told them about the dangers of the internet the day before.
- 15- Farida said that she had to write an essay about it that night.
- 16- Farida said that she thought she was going to need some help. – Farida thought that she was going to need some help.
- 17- Bob said that they had to give a talk about the advantages and disadvantages of the internet the following week, So he'd (would) need to prepare it that week.
- 18- Jennifer said that she wanted a sandwich.
- 19- Mr. Larsen said that he had lost his wallet in the park.

- 20- The investors said that they had changed their minds.
- 21- Mrs. Carson said that her daughter had taken her key.
- 22- Diana said that she had not paid off her loan. –Diana denied paying off her loan.
- 23- The neighbours said that they had not painted their house. – The neighbours denied painting their house.
- 24- Philip said that his boss had not rewarded him. – Philip denied being rewarded.
- 25- Dalia said that her mum had not been teaching her since lunch time.
- 26- The trainees said that they had completed their training course.
- 27- Steven said that he had written his name on the paper.
- 28- Ronald said that he had seen his doctor the day before.
- 29- The players said that they had done their best in the final.
- 30- The prisoners said that they hadn't had their dinner the previous day.
- 31- Rosalina said that she didn't give her CD to anyone. – Rosalina denied giving her CD to anyone.
- 32- The Experts said that they hadn't finished their report the previous week.
- 33- The soldier said that he hadn't done it.
- 34- The children said that they had not had their breakfast.
- 35- Marco said that he had been in his flat.
- 36- The boy-scouts said that they had not been in their tent.
- 37- Clara said that her classmate had not been with her.
- 38- Arnold said that he had been lying on his back.
- 39- The girls said that they had been cooking their dinner.
- 40- Amanda said that her friend had been tying the rope.
- 41- The couple said that they had not been packing their bags.
- 42- The Smiths said that they would not sue their cousin for what he had done.
- 43- The girls said that they could solve their problems.
- 44- The old clown said that he/she might use his/her old trick.
- 45- The nurses said that they must/had to use their uniforms.
- 46- The police officers said that Max must/had to come with them. – The police officers told Max to come with them.
- 47- Thomas admitted that he had to clean his room.
- 48- Maggie said that he was going to dye her hair blond.
- 49- Ahmad said that He worked in that café almost every day. But the day before he had seen a famous TV presenter there for the first time. She had eaten ice-cream at the table where I was sitting then.
- 50- The manager said that the engineers were going to design the new highway the coming month.
- 51- The students said that they would prepare a presentation about the usage of solar power in the area.
- Ex2:** 1- Mike asked me what I was talking about.
- 2- Sam wanted to know where Amanda was.
- 3- She asked me why the sky was blue.
- 4- My mother wondered why I was tired.
- 5- Mum asked the children why they left their books on the sofa.

- 6- The manager wanted to know where the secretary kept the discs.
- 7- The sales manager asked the salesmen why they were in his office.
- 8- The captain asked Jack why he was in his cabin.
- 9- John asked Mr. Collins why he had skipped his lunch.
- 10- The mail carrier asked Lora what she had been doing in his car.
- 11- The house keeper asked the children where they have been playing soccer.
- 12- Hilda asked David when he had met his lawyer.
- 13- The detective asked the hikers where they had found their raft.
- 14- The headmaster asked Stan why he had bought two tickets.
- 15- Maria asked Elena why her husband had been dancing Rhombi madly.
- 16- John wondered how he could improve his skills.
- 17- The kids asked Natasha why they had to obey her silly instructions.
- 18- Ben asked Martha when she was going to send her copy.
- 19- Andrea asked Stewart why they left rubbish there.
- 20- Brandon asked the traffic men why they were impounding his car.
- 21- Teddy asked the baker how he could stand his being there all the time.
- 22- The officer asked Donna when she had heard the scream.
- 23- Alfredo wondered how he might change his bad luck.
- 24- Helen asked me how old I was.
- 25- John asked Kareem what Jordanian people ate at wedding parties.

Ex3: 1- Alia asked me if I had enjoyed my trip.

- 2- Nancy wanted to know if I had seen her grammar book.
- 3- David asked me if I could come to the party.
- 4- Adam wanted to know if I would be in class the day after.
- 5- The boss asked Ali if he had seen Mr. Abdullah.
- 6- The old man asked the stranger if he knew his way.
- 7- Mrs. Gibson asked Mrs. Green if her daughter lent a helping hand.
- 8- Karen asked Kevin if he spent his day in the gym.
- 9- George wondered whether he was in his room.
- 10- The girls asked Sara if her brother was in her class.
- 11- The captain asked Jack if he was in his cabin.
- 12- The old woman wondered if she was repeating her words.
- 13- The judge asked the partners whether they had recovered their investment.
- 14- The doctor asked Alice whether she had restored her energy.
- 15- My father wanted to know if the postman had brought his package.
- 16- Frank asked Mary if her dad had brought her a gift.
- 17- Mr. Carson asked Mike if his sister had been talking on the phone for ages.
- 18- Mr. Walton wanted to know if his wife had been shopping for Christmas all day.
- 19- Kate asked the girls if they had eaten their apple pies.
- 20- He wanted to know if Lara had seen the doctor.
- 21- The investigator asked the officer if he had shot the fugitive.
- 22- The travel agent asked Marta if her trip had been tiring.
- 23- Sonia asked if (her) dad would do her a favour.
- 24- The waiter asked the girls if he might take their orders.

- 25- Ben asked Marta if she was going to send her copy.
- 26- Edward asked Alice if her teacher was going to test her the coming day/the day after.
- 27- Andrea asked Stewart if he would drive her home. (Andrea asked Stewart to drive her home.)
- 28- Mr. Hopkins asked his wife if she had taught her daughter how to cook.
- 29- Lauren wanted to know if the shopper charged the item to the credit card.
- 30- The reporter asked the athletes if they had been in their lanes.
- 31- The manager asked Rashid if he could check the prices of the goods.
- 32- Anwar asked his friend if he could use his pen.
- 33- Hatem asked Muna if she could speak any foreign language.
- 34- The flight attendant asked Muna if her child needed any special kind of food during the flight.
- 35- Rakan asked Khalid if there was a wireless network available in the library.

Ex4: 1- The teacher told me to read my text silently.

- 2- The officer ordered Jason to put his hands over his head.
- 3- The doctor advised Emma not to eat her meals late.
- 4- Danny begged his sister to let him see her gift.
- 5- Johnny's mother told him to put away his toys.
- 6- The teacher asked everybody to stand up.
- 7- The examiner asked me to speak a bit louder. (-The examiner asked me if I could speak a bit louder.)
- 9- Mr. Philips promised his daughter to pick her up at 3 pm.
- 10- The coach advised Robert to lose some weight.
- 11- The nurse advised Mike not to put ice on burns.
- 12- My grandfather advised me not to smoke.
- 13- Tina advised Anita to buy the cotton blouse.
- 14- Samantha allowed Lisa to read her diary.

Ex5: 1- "Have you got the time.", ("Did you have the time.")

- 2- "I slept for ten hours last night."
- 3- "You can read my diary."
- 4- MaJed: "What kind of books do bookshops sell?"
- 5- The police officer to Jack "Do you have any og kush?"
- 6- "Don't waste your time."
- 7- "Can I go out with my friends?"
- 8- "Do you want to go swimming with me, Omar?"

4.0- The Causative:

Ex1: 1- have it fixed.

- 2- had their house painted.
- 3- will have it repaired tomorrow.
- 4- is having the house cleaned.
- 5- usually have his documents typed.
- 6- have their wedding parties designed.
- 7- has her nails manicured twice a week.
- 8- had her portrait painted.

9- am going to have my tooth filled next Monday.

10- Have you ever had your palm read?

11- have my grass cut.

12- I had my computer fixed.

Ex2: 1- had...designed 2- bought 3- have it done 4- had it changed 5- had serviced 6- had...cut 7- repaired 8- planted 9- weeded/mowed 10- delivered 11- typed 12- bought 13- taken 14- taken 15- fixed 16- repaired

5.0- Verbs Followed with to/ing

Ex1: 1- going 2- telling 3- to come 4- having 5- talking 6- to speak 7- giving 8- to carry 9- cooking 10- to study 11- waiting 12- to come 13- to help 14- going 15- to bring 16- taking 17- to visit 18- going 19- to start 20- to leave 21- working 22- to get; to buy

6.0- Explaining Possibilities:

Ex1: 1- Salma can't have watered her plants.

2- There (The ground) must have (once) been a lake once.

3- Those people can't have eaten much food lately.

4- My brother must have been very excited.

5- My father can't have been tired.

6- It can't have been an easy situation.

7- That child's parents must be proud of him. (The parents must be proud of their child.)

8- He can't be at home.

9- The dress must cost a fortune.

10- The girl can't be Carla.

11- must have got.

12- Issa's phone might be broken.

13- It was very heavy, so he must have got very wet.

Ex2: 1- The speaker is sure he earns quite a lot of money to be able to afford that car.

2- I am sure that designing and building bridges are not easy, they're complicated structures.

3- I am unsure if she is French or not; she has a strong accent.

4- The speaker is sure that they came from somewhere hot like Africa.

5- The speaker is sure that they didn't finish their lunch, they only started eating five minutes ago.

6- The speaker is uncertain if Ali got stuck in heavy traffic.

7- I am sure that Alia didn't finish her homework.

8- The man feels sure that it isn't an interesting place to work.

9- The speaker is sure that Aqaba is an interesting place to live.

7.0- If Clauses (Conditional Clauses)

Ex1: 1- have 2- get/will get 3- had known 4- comes 5- will notice 6- would have arrived 7- will get 8- would have gone 9- had not hidden.

Ex2: 1- arrive; will be 2- will come; has to 3- will help; help 4- doesn't rain; will have 5- win; will, spend 6- passes; won't have.

Ex3: قد تختلف الإجابة من طالب لآخر

1- If it snows, we will not go out tomorrow.

2- I'll make a cake tomorrow if I buy the butter and flour.

- 3- If Ahmad comes, we will play chess tonight.
- 4- If I were you, I wouldn't tell Lina the bad news.
- 5- If I were you, I would apply for the job.
- 6- If Ahmad went to London, he would buy me a present.
- 7- If I were rich, I would buy a big house.
- 8- If Mona had studied for the exam, she would have passed.
- 9- If Sami had practiced hard, he wouldn't have lost the match.
- 10- If Rania hadn't come by bus, she wouldn't have been late.
- 11- Unless people work hard, they don't usually achieve anything in life.
- 12- Unless Ahmad gets the tickets, we will not go to the concert.
- 13- Unless somebody helps me, I will not finish the work today.
- 14- If you drive slowly, you will not make an accident.
- 15- If Nader gets high grades, he will get a scholarship.

Ex4: 1- eat 2- will not go 3- would say 4- had studied 5- touch/get 6- go / will go 7- were 8- would not have felt 9- don't eat 10- have 11- studied 12- had taken 13- get / mix 14- is 15- had 16- had gone 17- bite 18- doesn't leave 19- would have become 20- cry 21- will tell 22- had left 23- would have got / had had 24- do / will have 25- recycles 26- play 27- had / wouldn't 28- If I were you, I would send a text message. 29- If you press the button, the picture moves.

Unit Two: A Healthy Life (الوحدة الثانية اربع قطع)

- Vocabulary

إحفظ هذه الكلمات بالعربي لأنها تفيدك في الوحدة بشكل عام كالتعبير وسؤال المعاني والتفكير الناقد (Critical Thinking):

	Word	المعنى بالعربية		Word	المعنى بالعربية
1-	sceptical	متشكك	30-	adults	البالغين
2-	healthcare	الرعاية الصحية	31-	contributing	مساهم/مشارك
3-	priority	أولوية	32-	overweight	زيادة الوزن
4-	advance	تقدم / تطور	33-	factor	عامل/عوامل
5-	sanitation	تصريف المجاري	34-	manages	يتدبر امره
6-	rapidly	بسرعة	35-	physically	جسدي/ملموس
7-	consistent	ثابت/متوافق	36-	particular	مخصص / معين
8-	remote	بعيد	37-	serious	جدي/خطير
9-	appreciate	يقر بالفضل	38-	PE	الرياضة البدنية
10-	controversial	جدلي	39-	trend	نزعة/ميل
11-	electricity	كهرباء	40-	alien	غريب
12-	population	سكان	41-	moderate	متوسط/متواضع
13-	life expectancy	متوسط العمر	42-	recommend	يوصي بـ
14-	figures	ارقام/اشكال			
15-	average	معدل			
16-	statistics	احصاءات			
17-	infant	مواليد			
18-	mortality	وفاة			
19-	rates	معدلات			
20-	declined	ينخفض			
21-	advise	ينصح			
22-	strenuous	مجهد/متعب			
23-	stress	ارهاق/ضغط			
24-	calories	سعرات حرارية			
25-	addition	بالإضافة			
26-	commitment	التزام			
27-	muscle	عضلة			
28-	fitter	أكثر لياقة			
29-	lack	قلة/شح			

Unit Two Text One		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
acupuncture (n)	a system of complementary medicine in which fine needles are inserted in the skin at specific points.	الوخز بالإبر
ailment (n)	illness.	إعتلال/مرض خفيف
allergy (n) allergic (adj)	a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash.	تحسس/حساسية
arthritis (n) arthritic (adj)	a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints.	إلتهاب المفاصل
herbal remedy (n) remedy (v) remedial (adj)	an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease.	التداوي بالأعشاب تداوي
homoeopathy (n)	a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances.	المعالجة المثلية معالجة بالأعشاب أو المواد الطبيعية
immunisation (n) immunise (v) immune (adj)	the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness.	التلقيح إبر اللقاح
malaria (n)	a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes.	مرض الملاريا
migraine (n)	a very bad headache which often comes with a feeling of sickness and problems with vision.	صداع مع غثيان الصداع النصفي الشقيقة
antibody (n)	a substance produced by the body to fight disease.	الجسم المضاد
complementary- medicine (n) complement (v)	medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices.	الطب البديل الطب التكميلي
conventional (adj) convention (n) conventionally (adv)	having been used for a long time and is considered usual.	تقليدي
option (n) optional (adj)	something that is or may be chosen.	خيار
viable (adj) viability (n)	effective and able to be successful.	قابل للنجاح قابل للتطبيق
practitioner (n) practise (v) practical (adj) practically (adv)	someone who is qualified or registered to practise a particular occupation or profession.	من يمارس مهنة أو مهارة
sceptical (adj) sceptic (n) scepticism (n)	having doubts; not easily convinced.	متشكك

Exercise 1: Complete the following sentences with words from the above table:

- 1- A mosquito has bitten me, I am afraid it has and I'll suffer soon.
- 2- My mother never bakes, she has an to wheat.
- 3- He seems to be to colds - he just never gets them.
- 4- She coughs so much, she needs some
- 5- My grandfather has in his fingers, so he sometimes finds it difficult to write.
- 6- to nuts and milk are becoming more common.
- 7- Many serious diseases can be prevented by , which helps the body to build antibodies.
- 8- Headaches and colds are commons, especially in winter.
- 9- If you have a , the best thing to do is take some medicine and rest somewhere quiet.

Unit Two Text One STB: Complementary medicine: is it really a solution?

الطب التكميلي: هل هو علاج فعال؟

Most doctors used to be sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy, acupuncture and other forms of complementary medicine. If patients wanted to receive this kind of nonconventional treatment, **they** used to have to consult a private practitioner **who** was likely not to have a medical degree. However, in recent years, the perception of this type of treatment has changed. These days, many family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have medical degrees.

لطالما كان الأطباء متشككون في فاعلية وصحة الطب المثلي (التكميلي) / التدوي بالأعشاب أو بعض المواد) والوخز بإبر وأشكال أخرى من الطب التكميلي. إذا رغب المريض بالتدوي بمثل هذه العلاجات غير التقليدية، فإنه يتوجب عليهم أن يستشيروا من يمارس هذا الطب والذين بالاعتماد لا يحملون درجة علمية (شهادة طبية). وعلى أية حال، في السنوات الأخيرة، اختلف مفهوم هذا النوع من العلاج. فالعديد من أطباء العائلة هذه الأيام يدرسون الطب التكميلي جنباً إلى جنب مع الطب التقليدي. والعديد من المداويين بالطب التكميلي يحملون شهادات في الطب أيضاً.

Whereas critics used to say that there was no scientific evidence that non-conventional treatments actually worked, now it is more common for medical experts to recognise that conventional medicine may not always be the only way to treat an ailment.

لطالما قال النقاد أن الطب التكميلي لا يمتلك أي دليل علمي بأن المعالجة به نافعة، وإنه من الشائع أن الخبراء الطبيين أصبحوا مدركين أن الطب البديل أو التكميلي هو ليس دائماً الطريقة الوحيدة لعلاج الأمراض الخفيفة.

At a surgery in London, 70 per cent of patients **who** were offered the choice between a herbal or a conventional medicine for common *complaints* such as insomnia, arthritis and migraines chose the herbal remedy. Fifty per cent of patients then said that the treatment helped. One doctor said, "I now consider homoeopathy to be a viable option for many different conditions, including

anxiety, depression and certain allergies. It provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately."

في احدى عيادات الطب الجراحي في لندن، 70% من المرضى الذين خيروا بين العلاج بالأعشاب او اي علاج تكميلي بديل لشكاوى شائعة مثل الأرق والتهاب المفاصل والشقيقة اختاروا التداوي بالأعشاب. وقال عندها 50% من المرضى عندها أن العلاج ساعدهم. قال احد الأطباء "انا الآن اخذ بعين الاعتبار ان الطب البديل التكميلي هو خيار قابل للنجاح للعديد من الحالات بما فيها القلق والإكتئاب وبعض الحساسية. فهي توفر خيار آخر عندما لا ينفع الطب التقليدي بشكل دقيق.

However, complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments. **It** can never substitute for immunisations as **it** will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. **It** also cannot be used to protect against malaria.

على اية حال، لا يمكن للطب البديل ان يُستخدم لكل الإستطبابات العلاجية. لا يمكنها ان تحل محل عمليات التطعيم/التلقيح لأنها لن تنتج الأجسام المضادة والتي نحتاجها لتحمينا من أمراض الطفولة. ولا يمكنها أيضاً ان تحمينا من الملاريا.

One doctor said, "I will always turn to conventional medical treatment first to ensure that no underlying condition is missed. However, the idea of complementary treatments is no longer an alien concept. In **my** opinion, **it** should work alongside modern medicine, and not against **it**."

اعرب احد الأطباء انه سيقوم بالعودة للعلاجات الطبية التقليدية أو لا ليتأكد انه لم يمر عن اي حالة خفية. وعلى اية حال، فإن العلاج بالطب البديل لم تعد فكرة غريبة. في رأيه يجب على الطب البديل ان يعمل جنباً إلى جنب مع الطب الحديث وليس ضده.

Exercise 2: Based on your reading, answer the following questions:

1- What medical conditions may be possible to treat using complementary medicine?

.....

2- Read the article again, and decide if these sentences are true or false. Correct the false sentences.

a- Doctors and patients didn't **use to be** convinced that complementary forms of medicine work.

.....

b- Nowadays, many doctors study complementary forms of treatment.

c- At the surgery mentioned in the article, the majority of patients found that the herbal remedy did not help them.

.....

d- Complementary medicine can work as a replacement for immunisations or to treat malaria.

.....

.....

3- The article suggests that people's perception of complementary medicine has changed over time. Why do you think this is the case?

.....

.....

.....

4- "Complementary treatments should work alongside modern medicine, not against it." Explain this statement in two sentences, justifying your answer with examples from the article.

.....

.....

.....

5- What were most doctors' feelings like regarding homoeopathy?

.....

6- Who practices homoeopathy? Mention two parties.

.....

7- What is the situation now regarding nonconventional (complementary) medicine?

.....

.....

8- Give a word from the text which means the same as "illness".

9- Can conventional medicine always be the only way to treat an ailment?

10- What did people in a surgery in London choose when they were offered choice between a herbal or a modern medicine? Why?

.....

11- What is the opinion of the doctors mentioned in the text? Your answer should be based on two paragraphs.

.....

.....

12- Quote the sentence which indicates that doctors now deal with nonconventional treatment.

.....

.....

13- What is the problem with complementary medicine? Why can't it replace modern medicine?

.....

14- What do the underlined words/pronouns in the above text refer to? Select 5 only.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit Two Text Two		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربية
feel blue (v phrase)	[idiom] to feel sad.	يشعر بالحزن
see red (v phrase)	[idiom] to be angry.	يغضب
white elephant (n phrase)	[idiom] something that has cost a lot of money but has no useful purpose.	مكلف بدون فائدة
have the green light (v phrase)	[idiom] to have or give permission to go ahead with something or for something to happen.	يسمح / يُسمح له / يأخذ أو يعطي الإذن
red-handed (adj)	[idiom] in the act of doing something wrong.	يرتكب خطأ يرتكب حماقة
out of the blue (adj)	[idiom] apparently from nowhere; unexpectedly.	بشكل مفاجيء
bounce back (phrasal v)	to start to be successful again after a difficult time.	النهوض بعد الفشل
focus on (phrasal v) focus (n) focused (adj)	to direct your attention or effort at something specific.	يركز على
setback (n)	a problem that delays or stops progress, or makes a situation worse.	فشل / إخفاق
raise (v)	a question to bring up a problem or cast doubt on something.	يرفع / يسأل / يربّي
optimistic (adj) optimism (n) optimist (n)	believing that good things will happen in the future.	التفاؤل

Exercise 3: Fill the gaps with words from the text:

- Whenever I try to my study, I feel because all I want is to play and have fun. Then, I usually and become so because my future will be a if I don't study.

Unit Two Text Two STB: Are happier people healthier – and, if so, why?

هل الناس السعيدون أكثر صحة وإذا كان كذلك فلماذا؟

It's normal to feel a bit blue from time to time. However, studies show that negative emotions can harm the body.

من الطبيعي ان تشعر بالقليل من الحزن من حين لآخر. بالرغم من أن الدراسات اظهرت أن المشاعر السلبية يمكن أن تؤذي الجسم.

Anger can also have harmful effects on health. When you see red, your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems. However, what about positive feelings and attitudes? Until recently, scientists had not investigated whether there is a link between positive feelings and good health.

يمكن ان يكون للغضب أيضاً تأثيرات مؤذية على الصحة. عندما تغضب، يرتفع ضغط الدم لديك ويمكن أن تعاني من الصداع ومشاكل في النوم ومشاكل في الهضم. ولكن ماذا عن المشاعر والإتجاهات الإيجابية؟ لم يستطع العلماء حتى الآن التحري واكتشاف ما اذا كان هناك علاقة بين المشاعر الإيجابية والصحة الجيدة.

Then, in a study that had followed more than 6,000 men and women aged 25 to 74 for 20 years, researchers found that positivity reduced the risk of heart disease. Other factors influencing health included a supportive network of family and friends, and an optimistic outlook on life.

في دراسة تتبعت أكثر من 6000 رجل وامرأة لمدة عشرين سنة والذين تراوحت اعمارهم بين ال 25-74 وجد الباحثون ان الإيجابية قللت خطر أمراض القلب. ومن العوامل الأخرى التي تؤثر على الصحة تشمل وجود شبكة اقارب وأصدقاء داعمين للشخص ونظرة متفائلة للحياة.

The research showed that children who were more able to stay focused on a task, and who had a more positive attitude to life at age seven, were usually in better health 30 years later. The study has been controversial. Some health professionals believe that bad lifestyle choices, such as smoking or lack of exercise, are the reason for heart disease and other illnesses, and not an individual's attitude. The researchers, while agreeing, raise the question: why are people making bad lifestyle decisions? Do more optimistic people make better and healthier lifestyle choices?

أظهرت الدراسات أن الأطفال اللذين يملكون قدرة اكبر على التركيز على مهمة معينة والذين لديهم إتجاهات أكثر إيجابية في الحياة في عمر السابعة كانوا عادة في حالة صحية افضل بعد 30 عام. لقد كانت الدراسة جدلية. يؤمن بعض المختصين في الصحة بأن الخيارات السيئة في أسلوب الحياة مثل التدخين وقلة التمارين هي السبب وراء أمراض القلب وأمراض أخرى، وليس إتجاهاتهم الشخصية. تساءل الباحثون وهم موافقون على الفكرة عن السبب الذي يجعل الناس يتخذون قرارات تقود حياتهم للسلبية. هل يقوم الناس المتفائلون بإتخاذ خيارات حياتية افضل وأكثر صحية؟

The researchers appreciate that not everyone's personal circumstances and environment make it possible to live without worry. However, they believe that if we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.

يُقدر العلماء انه ليس كل انسان عنده ظروف و بيئة تعطيه الفرصة ليعيش حياة بدون قلق. ولكنهم يؤمنون انه اذا تمكنا من تعليم الأطفال ان يطوروا تفكيراً إيجابياً وأن ينهضوا بعد كل سقوط ستحسن صحتهم بشكل عام في المستقبل.

Exercise 4: Now, answer these questions. Use the text above and your brain of course:

1- Do you ever feel yourself getting angry? What kind of things can make you angry?

.....

2- Do you think that feeling angry is bad for you?

.....

3- What are the possible effects of anger and stress on someone's health?

.....

4- What is controversial about the researchers' study?.....

.....

.....

5- What is your opinion of the researchers' findings?

.....

6- Read the quotation by Thomas Carlyle "He who has health has hope; and he who has hope, has everything". Do you agree with it? Why/Why not?

.....

.....

.....

7- What do the underlined words in the above text refer to? Pick five only.

.....

8- How can we improve our children's overall health in the future?

.....

9- Quote the sentence which indicates that childhood attitude is almost similar to your attitude when you grow up.

.....

.....

10- What do the underlined words in the text refer to?

.....

.....

Unit Two Text Three		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربية
commitment (n) commit (v) committed (adj)	a promise to do something or to behave in a particular way.	إلتزام
healthcare (n)	the prevention or treatment of illness by doctors, dentists, psychologists, etc.	الرعاية الصحية
life expectancy (n) expect (v) expectation (n)	the length of time that a person or animal is expected to live.	متوسط العمر المتوقع
mortality (n) mortal (n and adj) mortally (adv)	death, especially on a large scale (e.g. infant mortality); the rate of deaths that occur (mortality rate).	الوفيات
reputation (n) repute (v)	the common opinion that people have about someone or something.	السمعة
decline (v) decline (n)	to decrease in quantity or importance.	ينخفض

Exercise 5: Complete the following sentences with words from the above table to give full meanings.

- 1- workers are some of the highest paid people in the country.
- 2- The hotel has a bad/good
- 3- I'd like to thank the staff for having shown such
- 4- in Europe has increased greatly in the 20th century.

Unit Two Text Three STB: Health in Jordan: A report

تقرير عن الصحة في الأردن

Introduction

Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. This is largely due to the country's commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority. Advances in education, economic conditions, sanitation, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier.

مقدمة: تعد الصحة في الأردن من الأفضل في الشرق الأوسط. هذا بالأغلب يعزى لإلتزام الدولة بالتأمين الصحي لكل كالأولوية. التطورات في التعليم والأوضاع الاقتصادية والتصرف المجاري والماء النظيف والحماية والإسكان كل ذلك جعل مجتمعا أكثر صحية.

A Healthcare centres

As a result of careful planning, the number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have been built, as well as 188 dental clinics. In 2012 CE, 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunised, thanks

to immunisation teams **that** had been working towards this goal for several years. Although there were remote areas of the country **where** people had been without consistent access to electricity and safe water, almost 99 per cent of the country's population now has access.

وكنتيجة للتخطيط الحذر، تطور عدد الخدمات الصحية بشكل سريع في السنوات الأخيرة و تم بناء أكثر من 800 مركز صحي وأيضاً 188 عيادة لطب الأسنان. في عام 2012، 98 بالمئة من الأطفال الأردنيين تم تلقيحهم بشكل تام بفضل فرق التطعيم والتي كانت ولا زالت تسعى وراء هذا الهدف لعدة سنوات. بالرغم من وجود مناطق نائية في الدولة والتي يكون بها الناس بدون اتصال ثابت بالكهرباء والماء النقي فإن الآن حوالي 99 بالمئة من سكان الدولة تتوفر لهم تلك الأشياء.

B Hospitals

Although the country has been focusing mainly on improving **its** primary healthcare facilities, **it** has not neglected **its** advanced medical facilities. The reputation of Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to Jordan for open heart surgery. In Jordan, the open heart surgery programme started in 1970 CE in Amman.

بالرغم من ان الدولة كانت تركز بشكل رئيسي على تطوير وتحسين المنشآت الصحية الأساسية، فإنها لم تهمل المنشآت الطبية المتطورة الخاصة بها. فلقد انتشرت هذه السمعة الطبية عن الأطباء الأردنيين في المنطقة والعديد من المرضى يأتون إلى الأردن لعمليات القلب المفتوح. بدأ برنامج عمليات القلب المفتوح في عمان في عام 1970.

C Life expectancy

The life expectancy figures show that Jordan's healthcare system is successful. In 1965 CE, the average Jordanian's life expectancy was age 50. In 2012 CE, this average life expectancy had risen to 73.5. According to UNICEF statistics, between 1981 CE and 1991 CE, Jordan's infant mortality rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in the world – from 70 deaths per 1,000 births in 1981 CE to only 32 deaths per 1,000 births in 2014 CE.

إن ارقام متوسط العمر الافتراضي توضح ان النظام الصحي الأردني ناجح. ففي عام 1965 ميلادي كان معدل متوسط العمر الافتراضي في الأردن حوالي 50 عاماً. في عام 2012 كان هذا المعدل للعمر الافتراضي قد ارتفع لحوالي 73.5. طبقاً لإحصاءات منظمة اليونسيف فإنه بين عام 1981 وعام 1991 انخفض عدد وفيات المواليد بشكل سريع لم يشهد في أي مكان في العالم - من كل 1000 كان يتوفى 70 في 1981 إلى 32 وفاة فقط من كل 1000 في عام 2014.

Conclusion

The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth, which will result in a strong work force with economic benefits for the whole country.

إن معدل وفيات المواليد والنظام الصحي المتميز كانا من العوامل المساهمة في الزيادة السكانية الصحية والتي سينتج عنها قوى عاملة قوية وفوائد اقتصادية لكامل البلد.

Exercise 6: NOW, it is required that you answer all the following questions. Use your BRAIN and the TEXT:

1- Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. Why do you think this is the case? Give examples.

.....

2- Write down the sentence which shows the sectors that helped in making Jordan healthier.

.....
.....

3- What is the link between the introduction and the conclusion in this report?

.....

4- Is the language formal or informal? How can you tell?

.....

5- What is the title of the report?

6- What is the purpose of the sub-headings before different sections?

.....

7- What made the number of healthcare services increase in Jordan over the past years?

.....

8- What does the underlined word “dental” in the text mean?

9- What are the result of careful planning?

.....

10- What is the achievement of the immunisation teams?

11- Did the government forget about the advanced healthcare facilities? What are the consequences of that?

.....

12- What is the specific disease that Jordanian doctors are very professional at?

.....

13- Give one example of life expectancy rate that was improved?

.....

14- What led the Jordanian population to rise? Give a reason from the text and another from your knowledge.

.....

15-What illnesses are children in Jordan vaccinated against?

.....

16- What are the underlined words/pronouns in the text refer to?

Unit Two Text Four		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربية
obese (adj) obesity (n)	extremely fat, in a way that is dangerous to your health.	التخمة السمنة المفرطة
cope with (phrasal v)	to deal successfully with, or handle, a situation.	يتعامل مع يتكيف مع
strenuous (adj)	using or needing a lot of effort.	مجد/متعب

Exercise 7: Use the words in the table above to complete the following sentences:

- 1- Will she be able to the work?
- 2- His doctor advised him not to take any exercise.
- 3- A diet that is high in fat can lead to

Unit Two Text Four AB: Get moving! (2016)

حركلي حالك

A- A growing problem

In many countries, an increasing number of young people and adults are overweight or even obese. One reason for this is the growing popularity of fast food, **which** didn't use to be as common as it is now. (1) Another big factor is lack of exercise. People would often walk to school or work, but these days many more of us drive. Modern technology has also played **its** part; we spend more and more time focusing on computer screens. Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.

مشكلة في تزايد: يوجد في العديد من الدول عدد متزايد من الصغار والبالغين الذين يعانون من السمنة أو حتى زيادة الوزن المفرطة. يعد شيوع الطعام السريع (الجاهز) والذي لم يكن شائعاً في السابق أحد الأسباب. والعامل الكبير الثاني هو قلة التمارين. كان الناس في السابق يمضون إلى المدرسة أو العمل ولكن هذه الأيام العديد منا يستقل السيارة. وقد لعبت التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورها الكبير في ذلك فنقضني وقتاً أكثر وأكثر محدقين في شاشات الكمبيوتر. لم يحلم أحد في التسوق عبر الإنترنت قبل اختراع الإنترنت ولكن الآن يمكننا شراء كل شيء بدون مغادرة الأريكة.

B- Time to listen

Health experts have been warning about this trend for years, and **their** advice is clear. Adults should aim to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target should be at least an hour a day. This might not sound very much. However, recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this. (2) School children are less physically active than **they** used to be. Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.

حان الوقت للإصغاء: لطالما حذر خبراء الصحة من هذا الميل ونصيحتهم واضحة. يجب على البالغين التمرن لساعتين ونصف في الأسبوع على الأقل، أما الأطفال والمراهقين فيجب عليهم التمرن لساعة يومياً على الأقل. وقد يبدو هذا ليس بالكثير. لكن الدراسات تثبت أن 50 بالمئة من البريطانيين لا يتمكنون من ذلك. إن أطفال المدارس أقل نشاطاً جسدياً مما كانوا عليه في السابق. تكره الفتيات خصوصاً حصص اللياقة البدنية/الرياضة. قد يؤدي هذا إلى مشاكل صحية خطيرة.

C- It's good for you!

Experts recommend a mixture of activities. **These** should include moderate exercise, such as fast walking, and more **strenuous** exercise, like running. (3) **They** also advise exercise **that** strengthens the muscles, for example sit-ups. The more muscle we build, the more calories we burn, and the fitter we become. In addition, exercise is a great way to cope with stress. In a recent study, patients who had been suffering from depression reported a great improvement after increased physical activity.

إتة لمن الجيد بالنسبة لك: يوصي الخبراء بالتنوع في النشاطات. ويجب أن تتضمن نشاطات متوسطة مثل المشي السريع ونشاطات أكثر إجهاد مثل الركض. وينصحون أيضاً بتمارين تقوي العضلات مثل الضغط/أو شد العضلات. حيث تبني عضلات أكثر فإنك تحرق سعرات حرارية أكثر ونصبح أكثر لياقة. بالإضافة إلى أن الرياضة طريقة رائعة للتعامل مع الضغط والإجهاد. ففي دراسة حديثة تبين أن المرضى الذين كانوا يعانون من الاكتئاب اعرىو عن تحسن عظيم بعد زيادة النشاطات الجسدية لديهم.

D- Useful tips

Of course this raises a question: how can I manage to fit in all this extra exercise? The best way is to build it into our daily lives so that it becomes a routine. (4) **It** doesn't have to take much extra time. You could get off the bus one stop earlier than usual, or stand up when you're on the phone! Most importantly, we should find a sport **that** we enjoy doing. That way, we will all become fitter, healthier and happier.

نصائح مفيدة: بالطبع هذا يجعلنا نتساءل كيف يمكننا أن نتدبر أمور كل هذه التمارين الإضافية؟ إن أفضل طريقة هي جعل التمارين أساسية في حياتنا اليومية بحيث نتبع روتين. وليس بالضرورة أن تأخذ وقتاً إضافياً. يمكنك النزول من الباص قبل الوصول إلى وجهتك أو تقف على قدميك وأنت تتكلم في الهاتف! والأكثر أهمية أن نجد رياضة نحبها. بهذه الطريقة سنصبح كلنا لائقون جسدياً وأكثر صحة وأكثر سعادة.

Exercise 8: Answer the following questions:

1- According to the article, what are the main reasons for higher rates of obesity?

.....

2- What is the minimum amount of exercise recommended for someone in your age group?

.....

3- Do most British people get enough exercise? Which sentence in the article tells you this?

.....

4- Guess the meaning of the highlighted word "strenuous" in paragraph C. Then check in a dictionary.

.....

5- The author suggests some ways of including exercise in our normal lives. Give two examples from the article.

.....

6- In your opinion, Are people in Jordan overweight? Do they share the same reasons with other countries? Give examples from your own experience to explain your answers.

.....

.....

.....

.....

7- Paragraphs C and D: Think of some simple ways you and other people you know could increase your physical activity. Write two or three ideas.

.....

.....

.....

.....

8- What do the underlined pronouns and words in the text above refer to?

.....

.....

.....

9- The article suggests getting off the bus just before you reach your final destination and walk. Do you think this is a good idea to exercise without wasting time? Write your opinion and suggest three more ways to achieve this.

.....

.....

.....

.....

10- Quote the sentence which indicates that you can buy things while lying on the couch?

.....

.....

11- What is the advice of experts for people? Write it down in details please.

.....

.....

12- What do girls usually refuse and what does that lead to?

.....

13- Give two examples of exercise.

.....

14- How can we cope with stress and depression?

- مصطلحات الألوان (Colour Idioms): إ حفظ المصطلحات الآتية

idiom	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربية
feel blue	to feel sad.	يشعر بالحزن
see red	to be angry.	يغضب
white elephant (2016)	something that has cost a lot of money but has no useful purpose.	مكلف بدون فائدة
have the green light	to have or give permission to go ahead with something or for something to happen. (2016)	يسمح يأخذ الإذن
red-handed	in the act of doing something wrong.	يفعل شيئاً خطأ
out of the blue	apparently from nowhere; unexpectedly.	بشكل مفاجيء

Exercise 9: A- What feeling does each idiom indicate? Use these: (happiness/sadness/fear/anger)

1- feel a bit blue 2- see red

B- What do the underlined/bolded colour idioms mean?

- 1- (2016) We've **got the permission** to go ahead with our project!
- 2- Luckily, the police arrived and the thief was caught **red-handed**.
- 3- I was shocked when I heard the news. It came completely **out of the blue**.
- 4- Nobody goes to the new private sports club. The building is a **white elephant**.
- 5- (2016) Study the following sentence and answer the question:
- A lot of houses became **white elephants** as their owners left to live in the city.
What does the underlined colour idiom mean?

Exercise 10- Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

viaable / alien / conventional / sceptical / complementary

- 1- I don't really believe that story – I'm very
- 2- Doctors often treat infections with antibiotics; that is the approach.
- 3- Medicines that are not the normal, traditionally accepted treatments are known as
- 4- Another way of saying that something could be successful is to say it is
- 5- If something seems very strange, we sometimes say it is

Exercise 11: Correct incorrect information using the phrases in the box.

conventional medicine / produce antibodies / children and teenagers / better and healthier lifestyle choices / suffer from health problems / relax and get some exercise

- 1- A good way to cope with stress is to work extra hard. No, it isn't. You should try to
- 2- Complementary medicine can be used to immunise people. No, it can't. You can immunize yourself using
- 3- Optimistic people make bad lifestyle choices. No, they don't. They make
- 4- Seeing red has positive effects on your health. No, it doesn't. You often

- Grammar: (be used to / used to / The Past Perfect Continuous)

1- be used to = (is/am/are + used to)

- نستخدم هذه القاعدة (be + used to) ونضع وراءها اسم أو ضمير أو صيغة (ing) عندما نتحدث عن الأمور المألوفة أو الاعتيادية المتعارف عليها:

- We've lived in the city a long time, so we're **used to** the traffic. (be used to + n)
- I didn't like getting up early, but I'm **used to** it now. (be used to + pronoun)
- She's lived in the UK for a year. She's **used to** speaking English now. (be used to + ing)
- يكون النفي لهذه الجمل بإضافة (n't) أو (not) إلى الأفعال المساعدة (is/am/are).

2- used to + V1

- نستخدم (used to) وبعدها الفعل المجرد لوصف عادات أو حالات كانت تحدث في الزمن الماضي ولكنها لا تحدث الآن.
- My mother **used to buy** my clothes, but now I choose my own.
 - She **used to be** a teacher, but now she's retired.
 - I **used to like** cartoon films when I was younger. These days I prefer action films.
 - يكون نفي هذه الجمل كالتالي (didn't use to + V1).

Exercise 12: Choose the correct option in each sentence.

- 1- I **didn't use to / am used to** understand English, but now I do.
- 2- Ali has lived in Lebanon for a year. He says he **is used to / didn't use to** living there now.
- 3- My family and I **are used to / used to** go camping once a month, but we stopped doing that when we moved to the city.
- 4- Joining a gym can be very tiring at first if you **used to / aren't used to** doing much exercise.
- 5- When I was young, I **used to / am used to** go fishing.

Exercise 13- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrases in the box. Two phrases are needed twice.

- تتساش انك لازم تصرف الفعل (be) إلى (is / am / are) حسب الفاعل قبل الفراغ في حال قررت استخدام هذا الفعل.

be used to / use to / not be used to / used to

- 1- We needed warm clothes when we went to London. We weren't the cold weather.
- 2- My grandparents didn't send emails when they were my age.
- 3- Rashed go swimming every morning, but now he doesn't.
- 4- We always go to the market across the street, so we eating fresh vegetables.
- 5- Please slow down. I walking so fast!
- 6- When you were younger, did you play in the park?

Exercise14: Choose the correct form of the verbs below.

- 1- I **used to / am used to** go shopping in the local supermarket, but it closed two years ago, so now I have to drive into town to shop.
- 2- There **didn't use to / wasn't used to** be so much pollution, but these days it is a global problem.
- 3- I think television **used to / is used to be** better than it is now. Most of the programmes these days are just reality TV.
- 4- Most Jordanians **are used to / used to** the hot weather that we have in summer.
- 5- There **was used to / used to** be a lot more wild animals in the past, but they are becoming rare nowadays.
- 6- Salma has been practising the oud hard and she **is now used to / now used to** playing it.

Exercise 15: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1- When I was a student, I (work) very hard. I (get up) very early and study alone before my lectures, attend lectures all day, and then come home to study some more!
- 2- Are you (live) in Jordan yet? You've only been here for two months.
- 3 When I was a child, my grandmother (make) cakes for us all the time, and I liked helping her a lot.
- 4- My grandfather retired a month ago. He isn't (have) nothing to do all day. He says he needs a project to concentrate on.
- 5- I just got glasses this week, and I'm not (wear) them yet, so I'm still having difficulty.
- 6- (2016) The underlined words in the following sentence are not used correctly. Replace these words with the correct ones.
- Zaid's friends **are used to** go fishing once a month, but they stopped doing that when they moved to the city of Irbid.
- 7- (2016) The underlined words in the following sentence are not used correctly. Replace these words with the correct ones.
- Most Jordanians used to the hot weather which we have in summer.
- 8- (2016) It is normal for my friend now to send emails.
- My friend is

3-Past Perfect Continuous: الماضي التام المستمر

Form: شكل الزمن

I / you / we / they / the boys / he / she / it / Ahmad / Samia + had + been + V+ ing

- يمتاز الحل بهذه القاعدة ان الفعل المجز يكون مجاور للفعل (be) يعني (be\ run) :طب وزااا ما جابولناش (be)؟؟؟
بكونو ظربوكو لانه الجملة بدها تتحل عالمعنى وهاد الكلام مستحيل لأن بصير في حلين للجملة والحلين صح.



Usage: استخدامات الزمن

1- للكلام عن شيء كان يحدث قبل شيء في الماضي ولتوضيح أيهما حدث قبل الآخر:

- Ali had been thinking about his friend when he received a text from him.

- By the time the bus arrived, we had been waiting for an hour.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي مع هذا الزمن

for, since, when, before, How long, all day, always, only, never, ever, still, just

- يكون مع الفعل المجرد الذي يكون في آخر الجملة (be) في مثل هذه الامثلة.
- ملاحظة: من الضروري معرفة الأفعال التي لا يمكن أن تكون مستمرة لذلك لا نستطيع استخدامها في الزمن الماضي التام المستمر لذلك نستخدم الماضي التام.

Negation: النفي

- عند نفي الماضي التام المستمر نضع (not) او (n't) بعد الفعل المساعد (had) فتصبح الجملة منفية.
ملاحظة: طريقة النفي المذكورة في الأعلى هي طريقة النفي لكل الأزمنة عدا المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط.

Examples:

- You **had been** waiting there for more than two hours when she finally arrived.

- You **had not been** waiting there for more than two hours when she finally arrived.

Interrogation: الإستفهام

عندما نريد تكوين سؤال في زمن الماضي التام المستمر فإننا: 1- نضع الفعل المساعد في بداية الجملة. 2- نضع الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد. (اي نكون عكسنا مكان الفعل المساعد والفاعل). 3- لا ننس وضع علامة السؤال.

Examples:

- You **had** been waiting there for more than two hours when she finally arrived.

- **Had** you been waiting there for more than two hours when she finally arrived?

Exercise 16: Correct the verbs between brackets:

1- You (be/not/wait) there for two hours when she finally arrived.

2- They (be/talk) for over an hour before Tony arrived.

3- She (be/work) at that company for three years.

4- How long you (be/wait) to get on the bus?

5- (2011)- The tailors finished making Laila's dress a week before the wedding. They

..... it for over a month. (be/make)

- 6- (2011)- When Mahmoud arrived, he was tired. He for five days. (be / climb)
 7- (2012)- Aisha received an email from Tahani yesterday, she to write since June. (be / promise)
 8- (2012)- Omar passed all his exams. He had for a month. (be\revise)
 9- (2014) We had with each other for a long time. (be, communicate)
 10- (2015)- Susan had about the idea for a while when she made the suggestion. (be/think)
 11- I up at 5 o'clock all week, so on Friday I was completely exhausted. (be/wake)
 12- (2016) By the time we arrived, they had for an hour. (be/talk)

Exercise 17: Put the verbs into the correct form.

- 1-We (be/sleep) for 12 hours when he woke us up.
 2-They (be/wait) at the station for 90 minutes when the train finally arrived.
 3-We (be/look for) her ring for two hours and then we found it in the bathroom.
 4-I (be/not / walk) for a long time, when it suddenly began to rain.
 5-How long (be/learn / she) English before she went to London?
 6- Frank caught the flu because he (be/sing) in the rain too long.
 7- He (be/drive) less than an hour when he ran out of petrol.
 8- They were very tired in the evening because they(be/help) on the farm all day.
 9- I (be/not / work) all day; so I wasn't tired and went to the disco at night.
 10- They (be/cycle) all day so their legs were sore in the evening.

Exercise 18- Complete, using the Past Perfect Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1- A: When I saw you yesterday, you looked really tired.
 B: Yes, I for half an hour. (run)

 2- My mother lost her purse yesterday. She in the market; she must have put it down somewhere and left it there. (shop)

 3- I made my mother a cup of tea. She was hot and tired; she all afternoon for a special family dinner. (cook)

Exercise 19- Complete the sentences by choosing the correct verb forms.

Hind (1) **has / had** been working very hard for several weeks before she did her final exams. When the results were published, she was delighted to learn that she (2) **has / had** passed. She (3) **has / had** done extremely well. She (4) **phoned / had phoned** her parents from the college. They (5) **were / had been** waiting for her call all morning. When she arrived home an hour later, there was a surprise for her. For several weeks, her parents (6) **planned / had been planning** a special weekend away to the Jerash Festival. They (7) **have / had** managed to make it a surprise for Hind, even though they (8) **were / had been** using the family computer to make all the arrangements! Hind was delighted. She (9) **has / had been** talking about the Jerash Festival for months; and now the whole family was going! It was a wonderful graduation present.

Writing: A Report كتابة التقارير

- عند كتابة التقرير، أكتب تقريرك في 3 فقرات رئيسية. يمكنك فصل الفقرة الوسطى لعدة فقرات حسب المطالب في السؤال. اكتب عنواناً مناسباً لتقريرك. استخلصه من السؤال.

1- المقدمة: اشرح عن ماذا ستتناول في تقريرك في جملتين أو ثلاثة.

The aim of this report is to provide information concerning
to..... It will include factors/details which/ about
and suggest ways to

2- في الفقرة الثانية، فقرة العرض، اعرض الموضوع، النسب، التواريخ وتحدث عن المطالب في السؤال لان السؤال يطلب منك امور معينة. ولا تأكتب رأيك نهائياً. كما قلنا يمكنك كتابة اكثر من فقرة.

A study was done to find out.....; Just under a quarter of those interviewed.....
The majority of the respondents said...../85 per cent of respondents said

3- التوصيات والخاتمة: لخص معلوماتك وضع بعض الإقتراحات إن وجد. استخدم الترفيم لتوضيح افكارك إن لزم.

ملاحظات:

1- اترك سطر بين الفقرات ، ضع عناوين لكل فقرة توضح محتوى كل فقرة. 2- استخدم علامات الترفيم التي شرحناها في الوحدة الأولى. 3- استخدم قواعد صحيحة والتي تعلمتها سابقاً. 4- راجع الاخطاء اللغوية.

مثال على التقرير: ارجع لكتاب النشاط ص 73/72 للمزيد من الأمثلة

Participation in the arts in London, England

Introduction

The aim of this report is to provide information concerning participation in the arts in London, England. It will include factors which discourage people from taking part, and suggest ways to increase participation.

Current situation

I interviewed people between the ages of 15 and 50 who live in London. Just under half of the people who were interviewed said they took part in music, drama or art. The most popular activity was taking music lessons, followed by going to art galleries and concerts. Drama and dance classes were popular with people in their thirties, because classes are social occasions.

Factors preventing fuller participation

About 40 per cent of people asked said that they did not enjoy the arts, giving reasons such as boredom for this. The other 60 per cent said that most arts-related activities were too expensive, such as theatre visits or music lessons. Some people said that finding a good teacher was difficult.

Recommendations

It is important to focus on those who currently do not participate in the arts at all by:

- arranging a subsidised program for those who want to study music or dance but do not have enough money
- publicising and presenting cheaper theatre performances
- further research into reasons why people do not enjoy the arts.

Exercise 20: Exercise is so important for our lives. Write a report answering the following questions: Are you, your family and your friends active enough? How could you increase your physical activity? Suggest three useful activities which can be practiced without wasting time.

Writing skills: Useful language for reports

Introduction

The aim of this report is to ... / This report examines ... / In this report, [...] will be examined.

Reporting information

There are more than [...] well-equipped health centres in [name of town].

Almost three-quarters of the population are regular users of ...

The number of [...] has declined/increased since [date].

Conclusion/Recommendations

It appears that ... / This results in ... / It is recommended that ... / The best course of action would be to ...

Handwriting practice lines with a large, faint watermark reading "أحمد" (Ahmed) diagonally across the page.

أنا أكتب

Unit Two Answers

Ex1: 1- malaria 2- allergy 3- immune 4- remedy/herbal remedy 5- arthritis 6- allergy 7- immunisation 8- ailment 9- migraine.

Ex2: 1- Common complaints such as: insomnia, arthritis and migraines, anxiety, depression and certain allergies.

2- a- True b- True c- False. Fifty per cent of patients said it helped. d- False. Complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments.

3- People's perception of complementary medicine has changed because they found that these types of treatment worked with no side effects, they also found that conventional doctors were studying more and more about these non-conventional ways of treatment.

4- Doctors should use complementary treatments with the scientific ways they have learned. They should not neglect/ignore them nor depend on them all the time. They should use them to cure common complaints such as: insomnia, arthritis and migraines, anxiety, depression and certain allergies.

5- Most doctors used to be sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy and other forms of complementary medicine.

6- Private practitioners and conventional doctors practice homoeopathy.

7- The idea of complementary treatments is no longer an alien concept, it should work alongside modern medicine, and not against it.

8- Complaints.

9- No, because the writer mentions that non-conventional (complementary) medicine provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately.

10- They chose the herbal remedy maybe because they were fed up with modern medicine.

11- One doctor said that he then considered homoeopathy to be a viable option for many different conditions. Another doctor said that he would always turn to conventional medical treatment first to ensure that no underlying condition was missed. ممكن ان تختلف اجابتك

12- These days, many family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have medical degrees.

13- Complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments. It can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. It also cannot be used to protect against malaria.

14-

Word/Pronoun	Reference
they	patients
who	a private practitioner
I	one doctor
It/it /It	complementary medicine
I/my	one doctor
it	complementary treatment
it	modern medicine

Ex3: - focus on/blue/bounce back/ optimistic/setback.

Ex4: 1- Yes, sometimes I get so angry. For example, when my parents ask me to go to bed early.

2- Yes, of course. I believe it is bad for me.

3- Anger can also have harmful effects on health. When you see red, your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems.

4- The study has been controversial. Some health professionals believe that bad lifestyle choices, such as smoking or lack of exercise, are the reason for heart disease and other illnesses, and not an individual's attitude.

5- I think he is right. When people have bad life conditions when they are young, his/her future will probably be uncomfortable because childhood situations always affect the personality of human beings.

6- Yes, I agree. Because healthy life leads to success, and when you are successful, you enjoy everything, especially work.

7-

Word	Reference
that	a study
who / who	children
they	The researchers
their	children

8- If we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.

9- The research showed that children who were more able to stay focused on a task, and who had a more positive attitude to life at age seven, were usually in better health 30 years later.

10- emotions=feelings / scientists=researchers / optimistic= believing that good things will happen.

Ex5: 1-healthcare 2- reputation 3- commitment 4- life expectancy

Ex6: 1- Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. This is largely due to the country's commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority. The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years and 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunized. Life expectancy had risen to 73.5 and infant mortality rates have fallen down.

2- Advances in education, economic conditions, sanitation, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier.

3- 'Health conditions are among the best in the Middle East' and 'Advances ... have made our community healthier' links with 'excellent healthcare system' and 'contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth'.

4- The language is formal. There are no contractions; the sentences are quite long, with relative pronouns, etc.; the vocabulary is formal; there are linking expressions such as: As a result of, According to and Although; the statistics included add to the formality.

5- Health in Jordan: A report.

6- They tell the reader what the section will be about. If it is a very long report, they are very useful in helping the reader to find particular pieces of information and making the text easier to read.

7- The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years as a result of careful planning.

8- Dental means: relating to the teeth. (According to Cambridge ALD)

9- The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have been built, as well as 188 dental clinics. In 2012 CE, 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunized. Almost 99 per cent of the country's population now has access to electricity and safe water.

10- 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunised, thanks to immunisation teams that had been working towards this goal for several years.

11- The country has not neglected its advanced medical facilities. The reputation of Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to Jordan for open heart surgery.

12- Jordanian doctors are very professional at open heart surgery. Many more patients come to Jordan for it.

13- Jordan's infant mortality rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in the world.

14- The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth.

15- Children in Jordan are vaccinated against tetanus, polio, measles, and smallpox.

16-

<u>Word</u>	<u>Reference</u>
that	immunisation teams
where	remote areas of the country
its/it /its	the country

Ex7: 1- cope with 2- strenuous 3- obese.

Ex8: 1- One reason for this is the growing popularity of fast food. Another big factor is lack of exercise. Modern technology has also played its part; we spend more and more time focusing on computer screens.

2- The target exercise should be at least an hour a day for children and teenagers.

3- Recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this.

4- Needing or using a lot of physical or mental effort or energy. (According to CALD)

5- You could get off the bus one stop earlier than usual, or stand up when you're on the phone.

6- Yes, most of people in Jordan are overweight. They share the same reasons with other countries and they have their own reasons such as: having fatty foods and drinking fuzzy drinks.

7- We can walk, play football, run and go to gym.

8-

<u>Word</u>	<u>Reference</u>
which	fast food
its	Modern technology
their	Health experts
they	School children
These	activities
They	Experts

that	exercise
It	يمكن اعتباره ضمير غير مرجعي
that	a sport

9- Getting off the bus just before you reach is a good idea but I have many other ways. For example, you can go to work walking if your work is near, or just go shopping walking also. Walking around with friends also is a great idea.

10- Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.

11- Health experts have been warning about this trend for years, and their advice is clear. Adults should aim to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target should be at least an hour a day.

12- Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.

13- Moderate exercise and strenuous exercise.

14- We can deal with stress and depression by exercising.

Ex9: A: 1- sadness 2- anger.

B: 1- have/had the green light 2- in the act of doing something wrong 3- unexpectedly 4- something that has cost a lot of money but has no useful purpose. 5- something that has cost a lot of money but has no useful purpose.

Ex10: 1- sceptical 2- conventional 3- complementary 4- viable 5- alien.

Ex11: 1-relax and get some exercise 2- conventional medicine 3- better and healthier lifestyle choices 4- suffer from health problems.

Ex12: 1- didn't use to 2- is used to 3- used to 4- aren't used to 5- used to.

Ex13: 1- used to 2- use to 3- used to 4- are used to 5- am not used to 6- use to.

Ex14: 1- used to 2- didn't use to 3- used to 4- are used to 5- used to 6- is now used to.

Ex15: 1- used to work 2- used to get up 3- used to make 4- used to having 5- used to wearing 6- used to 7- are used to 8- My friend is used to sending emails now.

Ex16: 1- hadn't been waiting 2- had been talking 3- had been working 4- had... been waiting 5- had been making 6- had been climbing 7- had been promising 8- been revising 9- had been communicating 10- been talking 11- had been waking 12- been talking.

Ex17: 1- had been sleeping 2- had been waiting 3- had been looking for 4- had not been walking 5- had she been learning 6- had been singing 7- had been driving 8- had been helping 9- hadn't been working 10- had been cycling.

Ex18: 1-B: had been running 2- had been shopping 3- had been cooking.

Ex19: 1- had 2- had 3- had 4- phoned 5- had been 6- had been planning 7- had 8- had been 9- had been.

Unit Three: Medical Advances

(الوحدة الثالثة اربع قطع)

- Vocabulary

إحفظ هذه الكلمات بالعربي لأنها تفيدك في الوحدة بشكل عام كالتعبير وسؤال المعاني والتفكير الناقد (Critical Thinking):

المعنى بالعربية	Word	المعنى بالعربية	Word	المعنى بالعربية
سكان	35- population	خوذة	1- helmet	
يزداد	36- increase	يلهم	2- inspire	
يجذب	37- attract	يراقب	3- monitor	
يتعامل مع	38- cope with	سمعة	4- reputation	
توسع	39- expansion	مخاطرة	5- risk	
اضافي	40- extra	حزام الأمان	6- seat belt	
يعمل/ يشغل	41- operate	الثقة بالنفس	7- self-confidence	
التنزل/شم الهوا	42- sightseeing	صغير	8- tiny	
يدل على	43- indicate	مقاوم للماء	9- waterproof	
متخصص	44- specialist	تعليم	10- education	
شامل	45- comprehensive	مهنة/وظيفة	11- career	
يتضمن	46- include	منزل/وطن	12- home	
قسم	47- department	ينقل/يوصل	13- transport	
مرتب / منضم	48- organised	طلب / حاجة	14- demand	
انتباه	49- attention	رعاية صحية	15- healthcare	
اذكر	50- mention	تكنولوجيا	16- technology	
اختراع	51- invention	ينقذ	17- rescue	
مرفق ب/ متصل ب	52- attached	يمول / تمويل	18- fund	
ليس ببعيد	53- not-too-distant	يطور	19- develop	
احساس	54- sense	معدات / ادوات	20- equipment	
متاح	55- available	مدمج	21- built-in	
يتطلع بفارغ الصبر ل	56- looking forward to	افكار	22- thoughts	
يسمح	57- allow	مريض	23- patient	
يتعامل مع / يتلاعب	58- manipulate	حتمًا / بالتأكيد	24- definitely	
يحسن	59- improve	مقابلة	25- interview	
تم تجربته / تجريبي	60- trialled	علاج	26- treatment	
عقار/ دواء	61- drug	يخضع ل/ يمر ب	27- undergo	
ألم / وجع	62- pain	مرض	28- sickness	
خلاف	63- disputed	يمتد ويتوسع	29- extend	
مقعد/ذا احتياج خاص	64- disabled	سابقاً	30- previously	
حوار	65- dialogue	رؤيه	31- vision	
وعي	66- conscious	علماء الأعصاب	32- neuroscientists	
تأثر ب	67- affected	يؤكد	33- confirm	
قدرات	68- abilities	فائدة	34- benefit	

Unit Three Text One		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
sponsor (v) sponsor (n) sponsored (adj)	to financially support a person or an event.	يرعى / راعي برعاية
prosthetic (n) prosthetics (n)	an artificial body part.	طرف صناعي
limb (n) limb (adj)	arm or leg of a person. describing an artificial body part.	طرف قدم / ذراع
artificial (adj) artifice (n) artificially (adv)	made or produced by human beings rather than occurring naturally.	صناعي
appendage (n) append (v)	a body part, such as an arm or a leg, connected to the main trunk of the body.	نموذج / عينة من قدم او يد صناعية
apparatus (n)	the technical equipment or machinery needed for a particular purpose.	جهاز / اداة
fund (v)	to pay for.	يمول
equipment (n)	tools or machines that have a particular purpose.	معدات

Exercise 1: Complete the following sentences with words from the above table:

- 1- The accident victims mostly had injuries to their lowers.
- 2- One of my friends has an heart. His original heart was weak.
- 3- The divers checked their breathing
- 4- The team ised by JVC, so the players wear the letters JVC on their shirts.

Unit Three Text One STB: Young Emirati inventor is going to travel the world

سيذهب طفل اماراتي في جولة حول العالم

Ten-year-old Adeeb al-Balooshi, from Dubai, is going to travel to seven countries on a tour **which** has been organised and funded by Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad, Crown Prince of Dubai.

سيذهب اديب البلوشي ذا العشر سنوات من دبي في جولة الى سبع دول في جولة نظمها ومولها الشيخ حمدان بن محمد امير دبي.

The boy caught Sheikh Hamdan's attention with **his** invention – a prosthetic limb for **his** father.

The Sheikh has taken a special interest in the boy, and hopes the tour that **he** is sponsoring for Adeeb will give the young inventor more self-confidence and inspire other young Emirati inventors.

جذب الطفل انتباه (اهتمام) الشيخ حمدان باختراعه وهو طرف صناعي لوالده. وقد اهتم الشيخ بالطفل ويأمل بأن هذه الرحلة التي يرهاها لأديب ستعطيها ثقة اكبر بنفسه وتلهم المخترعين الإماراتيين الآخرين.

Adeeb got the idea for a special kind of prosthetic leg while **he** was at the beach with **his** family.

His father, **who** wears an artificial leg, could not swim in the sea as **he** could not risk getting **his** leg wet. This inspired Adeeb to invent a waterproof prosthetic leg.

خطر فكرة القدم الصناعية لأديب بينما كان على الشاطئ مع عائلته. والده الذي يضع قدماً صناعية لم يستطع السباحة في البحر لأنه لا يمكنه المخاطرة بتبلييل قدمه. وهذا ألهم اديب ان يخترع قدماً صناعية مقاومة للماء.

Adeeb is going to visit the USA, France, the UK, Ireland, Belgium, Italy and Germany, **where he** will be staying with relatives. However, while **he** is in Germany, Adeeb will not be spending all **his** time sightseeing. **He** will be working with a specialist doctor to build the appendage. **He** will also be attending a course on prosthetics and learning about different kinds of medical apparatus.

سيزور اديب الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية وفرنسا وبريطانيا و ايرلنده وبلجيكا وإيطاليا وألمانيا حيث سيبقى هناك مع اقاربه. ولكن بينما هو في ألمانيا، لن يقضي اديب وقته بالتتزه. سيعمل مع طبيب مختص لبناء النموذج الأولي. سيحضر أيضاً دورة عن الأطراف الصناعية وسيتعلم عن الأدوات الطبية المختلفة.

Adeeb has invented several other devices, including a tiny cleaning robot and a heart monitor, **which** is attached to a car seat belt. In the case of an emergency, rescue services and the driver's family will be automatically connected with the driver through this special checking device.

اخترع اديب العديد من الاجهزة الاخرى بما فيها رجل تنظيف الي مصغر وجهاز لمراقبة القلب الذي يتم توصيله لحزام الامان في السيارة، في حالات الطوارئ سيتم الاتصال بخدمات الإنقاذ وعائلة السائق بواسطة هذا الجهاز الفاحص.

He has also invented a fireproof helmet. This special equipment, **which** has a built-in camera system, will help rescue workers in emergencies. It is for these reasons that Adeeb rightly deserves **his** reputation as one of the youngest inventors in the world.

اخترع أيضاً خوذة رأس مقاومة للحريق والتي تحتوي على جهاز تصوير (كاميرا) ستساعد عمال الإنقاذ في حالات الطوارئ. ولهذا السبب استحق اديب بجدارة سمعته كواحد من اصغر المخترعين في العالم.

Exercise 2: Now, answer the following questions:

- 1- Why was Sheikh Hamdan interested in helping Adeeb?
.....
- 2- How did Adeeb get his inspiration for a waterproof prosthetic leg?
.....
- 3- Who will Adeeb be staying with in Germany, and what will he be doing there?
.....
.....
- 4- What does the suffix **-proof** mean in (waterproof/fireproof)?
.....
- 5- What is the purpose of the in-car heart monitor? Why do you think that it is built into the seat belt?
.....
.....
- 6- Why did the Sheikh offer Adeeb the gift of a world tour?
.....
- 7- How old is Adeeb?
- 8- Who is Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad?
- 9- (Think! Think! Think!) How do you think Adeeb's dad lost his leg?
.....
- 10- Why did the father refuse to swim in the sea?
- 11- Quote the sentence which indicates that Adeeb is going to visit many countries.
.....
.....
- 12- Will Adeeb be spending all his time sightseeing in Germany? If not, what will he be doing?
.....
.....
.....
- 13- Mention some of Adeeb's inventions.
.....

14- (Brain Storming) Sponsoring inventors is a very noble matter, what do you think are the advantages of sponsoring those genius people?

.....

15- What device did Adeeb use in his fireproof helmet and what is its advantage?

.....

16- What did Adeeb gain for what he did?

17- What do the underlined pronouns/words refer to?

.....

Unit Three Text Two		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
symptom (n)	a physical problem that might indicate a disease.	اعراض/عرض
stroke (n)	an illness when a blood tube in your brain bursts or is blocked, resulting in the brain being unable to function normally.	السكتة الدماغية
side effect (n)	effects of medicine on your body in addition to curing pain or illness.	آثار جانبية
scanner (n) scan (v)	a medical instrument that uses radiography to produce images of the insides of the human body.	ماسح اشعاعي للصور الطبية
pill (n)	a small round piece of medicine to be swallowed whole.	حبة دواء
MRI (n)	(Magnetic Resonance Imaging) a scan that uses strong magnetic fields to make a picture of the inside of someone's body for medical reasons.	التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي
medical trial (n) trial (v)	trial to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of medications.	تجربة دوائية
implant (n) (v)	a piece of tissue, prosthetic device, or other object implanted in the body.	زرعة طبية
expansion (n) expand (v)	the act of making something bigger.	توسع
drug (n)	a medicine or a substance used for making medicines.	عقار/دواء
dementia (n)	a mental illness the symptoms of which are problems with memory, personality changes and problems with reasoning.	الخلل الدماغى الناتج عن تقدم العمر
coma (n)	a state of unconsciousness caused by a certain injury and that lasts for an extended period of time.	الغيبوبة
cancerous (adj)	something that has or can cause cancer. a very serious disease in which cells in the body begin to grow abnormally.	سرطاني

Exercise 3: Complete the following sentences with words from the above table:

- 1- Does this drug have any?
- 2- She went into a deep after taking an overdose of sleeping pills.
- 3- He's complaining of all the usual flu - a high temperature, headache and so on.
- 4- He died of liver
- 5- The most common form of is Alzheimer's disease.

Unit Three Text Two STB: In the future

في المستقبل

We will be able to have an operation to increase our intelligence.

Scientists have already developed brain implants **that** improve vision or allow disabled people to use **their** thoughts in order to control prosthetic limbs like arms, legs or hands, or operate a wheelchair. In 2012 CE, research on monkeys showed that a brain (1) implant improved **their** decision-making abilities. How will humans benefit from this research? Scientists hope to develop a similar device to help people **who** have been affected by brain damage, **which** could be caused by (2) dementia, a stroke or other brain injuries.

سنتمكن في المستقبل من القيام بعملية جراحية لزيادة الذكاء. طور العلماء حشوات/زراعات في الجسم تعمل على تحسين الرؤية أو تسمح/يمكن ذوي الإحتياجات الخاصة من استخدام أفكارهم للتحكم بأطراف/أعضاء صناعية مثل الذراعين والارجل أو الأيادي أو لتشغيل واستخدام كرسي العجلات. أظهرت الدراسات على القرود في عام 2012 أن زراعة دماغية قد حسنت قدرات اتخاذ القرار لديهم. كيف سيستفيد البشر من هذا البحث؟ يأمل العلماء أن يطوروا أداة شبيهة لمساعدة الناس الذين أصيبوا بشلل الدماغ والذي يمكن أن يكون سببه الخلل الدماغي أو السكتة الدماغية أو إصابات/أضرار/أمراض دماغية أخرى.

Doctors will be able to communicate with people in a coma.

In 2010 CE, neuroscientists confirmed that it was possible to communicate with some patients in a coma, by using a special brain (3) scanner called an MRI. **They** suggested that, in the future, more meaningful dialogue with patients in a coma would be possible. Two years later, it has finally happened. The scanner, used on a man **who** has been in a coma for more than twelve years, proves that **he** has a conscious, thinking mind – a fact that had previously been disputed by many. Doctors plan to use similar brain-scanning techniques in the future to find out whether patients are in pain, or what **they** would like to be done in order to improve **their** quality of life.

سيتمكن الأطباء من التواصل مع الناس المصابين بالغيوبية. أكد علماء أعصاب في عام 2012 أنه كان من الممكن التواصل مع بعض المرضى في غيوبيتهم باستخدام ماسح دماغي خاص يسمى (التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي). واقترحوا أنه وفي المستقبل سيكون من الممكن عمل حوارات ذات معنى أكثر مع المرضى في حالة الغيوبية. وحدث هذا فعلاً بعد عامين. أثبت الماسح الدماغي الذي استخدم مع مريض في غيوبية منذ اثني عشر عاماً أن لديه وعي وعقل مفكر - وهي فكرة كانت في حالة جدل بين العديدين. يخطط الأطباء لإستخدام تقنية مسح دماغي مشابهة في المستقبل لمعرفة ما إذا كان المرضى يتألمون في الغيوبية أو ماذا يرغبون أن يحدث لتحسين جودة / مستوى حياتهم.

A new drug will help to treat certain types of cancer almost instantly.

A new cancer drug is being trialled in Plymouth, UK, **which** doctors hope will extend the lives of cancer patients and reduce **their** symptoms overnight. **It** is taken as a single (4) pill every morning, and so far patients have shown none of the usual (5) side effects such as the sickness and hair loss that are experienced when undergoing other forms of cancer treatment. The new treatment works by blocking a protein **which** causes cancerous cells to grow. It will improve patients' life expectancy and quality of life much more quickly than any other treatment. The patients were

interviewed a year after starting the treatment and are fit and well, saying that **they** are definitely going to continue the trial. **They** have every reason to believe the new drug is going to work. Doctors at Plymouth Hospital hope that **it** will help patients from all over the world.

سيساعد نوع جديد من العقار الطبي (الدواء) في علاج أنواع من السرطان بشكل شبه فوري. يتم تجربة نواء جديد للسرطان في بليموث، بريطانيا، والذي يأمل الأطباء أنه سيمدد حياة مرضى السرطان ويقلل أعراضه بين عشية وضحاها. يؤخذ الدواء حبة منفردة كل صباح ولم يظهر على المرضى أي أعراض جانبية كالغثاس و سقوط الشعر المعتاد عندما يكونون تحت أنواع مختلفة من علاج السرطان. يعمل الدواء عن طريق منع بروتين معين مسؤول عن التسبب بنمو خلايا سرطانية. سيعمل على تحسين/زيادة العمر المتوقع للمرضى ونوعية حياتهم بسرعة أكثر من أي علاج آخر. تم عمل مقابلات مع المرضى بعد عام من بداية العلاج وكانوا أصحاء وجيدين. قالوا أنهم سيقومون حتماً بإكمال التجربة (العلاجية). لديهم كل الأسباب لتجعلهم يؤمنون بأن العلاج سيعمل. يأمل العلماء في مستشفى بليموث أن العلاج سيساعد المرضى في كل أنحاء العالم.

Exercise 4: Answer the following questions, your answer should be based on your brain and the book:

1- What do you think the implications (تداعيات/نتائج) will be for the world if people live longer? Should we be using technology to help us to improve life expectancy?

.....

2- What are the benefits of the implants that scientists have lately developed?

.....

3- The writer suggests three kinds of limbs, write down two of which.

4- Will it be possible to communicate with people who are in a coma? If yes, how would that be possible?

.....

5- What does MRI stand for?

6- Write down the sentences which indicate that communicating with people who are in a coma was achieved.

.....

7- What is the doctors' plan for communicating with people in a coma?

.....

8- The writer talks about a type of drug for people who suffer from cancer, what does that drug do?

.....

9- What do other forms of cancer treatment do when patients undergo them?

.....

10- How does the new cancer treatment work?

.....

11- What was the impression of those patients on the new cancer treatment and what is their opinion about it?

.....

12- (Brain Storming) Why do you think cancer patients agreed to undergo new types of treatments?

.....

13- What do you think will be the request of those who are in a coma if they were able to be contacted with?

.....

14- What do the underlined words/pronouns refer to?

.....

.....

.....

Unit Three Text Three		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
ward (n) (v)	a room in a hospital, especially for patients needing similar kinds of care.	جناح / قسم
radiotherapy (n)	the use of controlled amounts of radiation (a form of energy) to treat disease, especially cancer.	العلاج الإشعاعي
outpatient (n)	someone who goes to a hospital for treatment but does not stay for the night.	مريض غير مقيم
paediatric (adj) paediatrics (n) paediatrician (n)	describing the area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses.	متعلق بطب الأطفال

Exercise 5: Complete the following sentences with words from the above table:

- 1- There is a hospital which is named after Queen Rania of Jordan.
- 2- KHCC has a unit which uses radiation to kill cancerous cells in the body.
- 3- is one of the parts or large rooms into which a hospital is divided, for treating people with a similar type of condition.
- 4- Inpatient is the opposite of

Unit Three Text Three STB: The King Hussein Cancer Center

مركز الملك حسين للسرطان

The King Hussein Cancer Center (KHCC) is Jordan's only comprehensive cancer treatment centre. **It** treats both adult and paediatric patients. As the population of the country increases, more and more families will rely on the hospital for cancer treatment. Patients come not only from Jordan but also from other countries in the region, as **they** are attracted by its excellent reputation, lower costs, and cultural and language similarities.

مركز الملك الحسين للسرطان هو مركز الأردن الوحيد والشامل لعلاج السرطان. يعالج المركز المرضى البالغين والمرضى من الأطفال. ومع ازدياد عدد السكان في الدولة، سيعتمد عدد أكبر من العائلات على هذا المستشفى لعلاج السرطان. يأتي الناس ليس من الأردن فحسب، بل من بلاد أخرى من المنطقة لأنهم ينجذبون لسمعة المركز الممتازة والتكاليف المنخفضة والتشابه الثقافي واللغوي.

In order to cope with the increase in demand for treatment, the KHCC has begun an expansion programme. Building started in 2011 CE. The hospital will have more than doubled **its** capacity by 2016 CE, increasing space for new cancer cases from 3,500 per year to 9,000.

وللتعامل مع زيادة الطلب على العلاج، بدأ مركز الحسين للسرطان برنامجاً للتوسع. بدأ البناء عام 2011 وبحلول عام 2016 سيكون المركز قد ضاعف قدرته الاستيعابية بزيادة المساحة لحالات مرضية جديدة من 3500 في السنة إلى 9000.

By then, they will have added 182 extra beds, along with bigger units for different departments, including radiotherapy. New adult and paediatric wards will have opened. Additionally, they will have built a special ten-floor outpatients' building, with an education centre **which** will include teaching rooms and a library. Many cancer patients live far away from Amman, **where** the KHCC

is located, and the journey to and from the hospital is often difficult. For this reason, there are plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan. In the near future, King Abdullah University Hospital in Irbid hopes to set up radiotherapy machines, so that cancer patients from northern Jordan will not have to go to Amman for radiotherapy treatment.

عندها، سيكونون قد اضافو 182 سرير اضافي مع وحدات إضافية لأقسام مختلفة بما فيها العلاج الإشعاعي. سيكون قد تم افتتاح اجنحة للبالغين وللأطفال. إضافة إلى مبنى مكون من عشرة طوابق للمرضى غير المقيمين ومركز تعليمي والذي سيتضمن غرف تعليمية ومكتبة. يعيش العديد من المرضى بعيداً عن عمان حيث يوجد المركز، والرحلة عاد ما تكون صعبة من وإلى المركز، لهذا السبب هناك خطط لتوسيع منشآت العناية بمرضى السرطان لتشمل مناطق أخرى من الأردن. يطمح مستشفى الملك عبدالله الجامعي في اربد في المستقبل القريب بإقامة وتشغيل وحدات العلاج الإشعاعي، لكي لا يضطر مرضى السرطان من شمالي الأردن للذهاب إلى عمان للعلاج بالإشعاع.

Exercise 6: Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1- Why does the hospital need to expand?
- 2- Give three reasons why patients from other countries visit the centre.
- 3- What is one of the disadvantages of the KHCC for patients who live far from Amman?
- 4- What plans are there for increasing cancer care facilities in other parts of Jordan?
- 5- What does KHCC stand for?
- 6- Where do people come from in order to get medical treatment?
- 7- What is the plan to face the increase in the demand for treatment?
- 8- What does the underlined word “paediatric” mean?
- 9- What is the current capacity rate of KHCC per year?
- 10- What are the things that will be added to the hospital by 2016?
- 11- Why is it important to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan?

12- What is the advantages of starting a radiotherapy unit in King Abdullah University Hospital?
.....

13- Where is King Abdullah University Hospital located?

14- What does the education centre in KHCC include?

15- What do the underlined and bolded words/pronouns refer to?
.....

16- Quote the sentence which shows that the hospital is an attractive medical centre for many Jordanians and Arabs.
.....

17- Read the quotation. "Wherever the art of Medicine is loved, there is also a love of Humanity. Hippocrates (460 BCE–370 BCE) Do you agree with it? Why/Why not?
.....
.....
.....

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
bionic (adj)	describing a limb or body part that is electronically or mechanically powered.	ذو أعضاء آلية
cross (adj)	angry or annoyed.	غاضب/منزعج
publicise (v) publicity (n)	to give information about something to the public, so that they know about it.	يجعل معروفاً ينشر
career (n)	a job undertaken for a significant period of a person's life and with opportunities for progress.	وظيفة

Exercise 7: Fill the gaps with words from the table above giving useful sentences:

- 1- My Dad gets with me if I leave the kitchen in a mess.
- 2- The work of the charity has been widelyed throughout the media.
- 3- My friend had a car accident and as a result he has a arm.

Unit Three Text Four AB: Accident Victim Tests First Artificial Limb

ضحية حادث يخضع لتجربة اول طرف صناعي

Scientists have successfully invented a prosthetic hand with a sense of touch. **It** is an exciting new invention, **which they** plan to develop. It is possible that, in the not-too-distant future, similar artificial arms and legs will have taken the place of today's prosthetic limbs.

ابتكر العلماء بنجاح يد آلية يمكنها الإحساس. انها اختراع جديد مثير للحماسة والذي يسعى العلماء لتطويره. من المحتمل في المستقبل غير البعيد ستحل اذرع واقدام صناعية محل الاطراف الصناعية الحالية.

Dennis Sorensen, a 39-year-old from Denmark, was the first person to try out the new invention.

After losing his left hand in an accident, **he** had been using a standard prosthetic hand for nine years. The new hand, **which** was developed by Swiss and Italian scientists, was a huge improvement. With **it**, Sorensen could not only pick up and manipulate objects, but **he** could also feel **them**. 'When I held an object, **I** could feel if it was soft or hard, round or square,' he explained.

He said that the sensations were almost the same as the ones he felt with **his** other hand.

كان دينيس سورينسن البالغ من العمر 39 من الدنمارك اول شخص جرب هذا الاختراع. كان يستخدم يد صناعية عادية بعدما فقد يده اليسرى في حادث لمدة تسع سنوات. كانت اليد التي طورها علماء سويسريون و اطالبيون تحسيناً ضخماً. لا يستطيع سيرنسون التقاط الأشياء وتعديلها بها فحسب، بل يستطيع ايضا الإحساس بهم. اوضح انه عندما يمسك جسماً، يستطيع ان يحس ما اذا كان ناعماً او قاس (خشناً)، مربع او مستدير. وقال ان الاحساس كان تقريباً كالإحساس الذي شعر به باليد الثانية.

Unfortunately, Sorensen was only taking part in trials, and the equipment is not ready for general use yet. **He** was only allowed to wear **it** for a month, for safety reasons. So now **he** has **his** old artificial hand back. However, **he** hopes that soon **he** will be wearing the new type of hand again. **He** is looking forward to the time when similar artificial limbs are available for the thousands of people **who** need **them**. He will have helped to transform **their** lives.

لسوء الحظ، كان سورينسن يشارك في تجارب والأداة لم تكن جاهزة للاستخدام بعد. سمح له بارتدائها لمدة شهر فقط لاسباب تخص السلامة. وبذلك فقد استرجع يده الصناعية الآن. على اية حال هو يأمل بأن يرتدي هذا النوع الجديد من الايدي قريباً. ويتطلع بشوق للوقت الذي ستكون فيه اطرافا مشابهة متاحة لآلاف الناس الذين يحتاجونها. سيكون بذلك قد شارك بتغيير مجرى حياتهم.

Exercise 8: Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1- Who invented the new prosthetic hand? What is special about it?
.....
- 2- Why does Dennis Sorensen need a prosthetic hand?
.....
- 3- Which hand is he wearing now? Why?
.....
- 4- What do the bolded and underlined pronouns refer to?
.....
- 5- Find a word that is the opposite of 'natural' in the first and third paragraphs.
.....
- 6- What is special about the new artificial hand they are talking about?
.....
- 7- Quote the sentence which indicates personal information about the man under the testing process.
.....
.....
- 8- How long has Sorensen been using an artificial hand?
.....
- 9- What do the underlined/bolded words and pronouns refer to?
.....
- 10- What could Sorensen do with the new hand?
.....
- 11- Why can't Sorensen wear his new hand now?
.....
- 12- Critical Thinking: If you were in Sorensen's place (god forbid), would you agree to undergo this kind of test? Why? Why not?
.....

Collocations:

التلازم اللفظي

هو:

- 1- توارد لفظين (أو أكثر) معاً أكثر من ورود أحدهما مع غير الآخر.
- 2 - تكرار معتاد لمجموعات من الكلمات المفردة، والتي يأتي تكرارها معاً من خلال شيوع الاستخدام بحيث تميل لتشكيل وحدة مميزة. (تعريف محمد حسن يوسف).
- 3- هو ورود كلمتين أو أكثر معاً بشكل متكرر بحيث يشتهر حدوثهما معاً أكثر من حدوثهما مع غيرهما وتشكل شبه جملة اصطلاحية. (تعريف محمد الأسود)

<u>المعنى</u>	<u>Collocation</u>
يحظى بإنتباه شخص ما	catch (someone's) attention
تخطر له/لها فكرة	get an idea
يهتم بشخص أو شيء	take interest
يقضي الوقت	spend time
يلتحق بدورة	attend a course

Exercise 9: look at the table above and work the following out:

- 1- I think we need to more time together.
- 2- Over two hundred peopleed the course.
- 3- They the idea of the car from the beetle itself.
- 4- Some guys know how to girls attention.

Exercise 10: Write 3 sentences of your own using collocations from the table above.

.....

.....

.....

Grammar: 1- The Future Continuous: (Not Finished in The Future)

- Form : شكل الزمن :

will + be + V -ing



Usage الاستخدام:

- To talk about a continuous action in the future.

نستخدم هذا الزمن للكلام عن الاحداث التي ستكون مستمرة في المستقبل:

- This time next year, they **will be preparing** for their final exams.

- What **will** we **be doing** in ten years' time?

في هذا الزمن

How to Make Negation: كيفية عمل النفي

كما تعودنا نضيف (not) او (n't) لأول فعل مساعد في الجملة او نضع (won't) كالتالي:

- I will be having a bath when you call me tomorrow.

- I will **not** (won't) be having a bath when you call me tomorrow.

How to Make Questions: كيفية عمل السؤال

عندما نريد ان نكون سؤالاً فإننا نضع (will) في بداية السطر ونكمل:

- Sam **will** be having lunch with his girlfriend tomorrow.

- **Will** Sam be having lunch with his girlfriend tomorrow?

Key Words: الكلمات الدالة / الظروف التي تأتي في الجملة لتدل على الزمن

this time tomorrow / this time next week / this month next year / at this time tomorrow /
at + ساعة / at that time / **tonight** / during July and August / by 3 O'clock tomorrow / tomorrow /
next year / next week / in the future / by 2050 / **in five years' time** / on Friday afternoon / in
June / tomorrow night / for two weeks / for much longer / this afternoon

- ممكن ان يكون الدليل فعل مضارع في طرف الجملة الآخر.

- لا تعتمد على الدلائل اعتماد اعمى لأن الدليل الواحد يدل على أكثر من زمن.

Exercise 11: Complete the mini-dialogues using the Future Continuous.

1- A: Can I call you tonight after 6 p.m., or (you have) dinner with your family then?

B: No, I (not have) dinner at that time. I
(watch) the news. My mum (prepare) dinner, because we usually eat at about 7 p.m.

2- A: What do you think (you do) in two years' time?

..... (you work), or (you do) a university degree?

B: I certainly (not work) because I want to do a degree in Medicine. It's a very long course, so I (still study) in seven years' time!

Exercise 12: Correct the verbs between brackets filling the gaps and giving useful sentences:

1- He all the morning tomorrow. (travel)

2- My father the newspaper at 8 a.m. tomorrow. (read)

3- We the game during this week. (practice)

- 4- we a geography lesson next period. (have)
5- My brother with his friends from 6 p.m. to 7 p.m. tomorrow. (not/play)
6- I in the train tomorrow at this time. (sit)

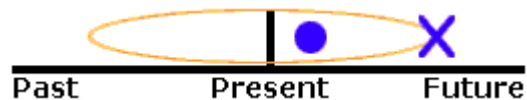
Exercise 13: Choose the correct form of the verbs.

- 1- If you need to contact me next week, we'll **stay / be staying** at a hotel in Aqaba.
2- If you need help to find a job, I will **help / be helping** you.
3- I can't call my dad right now. He'll **board / be boarding** the plane. It takes off in an hour.
4- We won't be home tomorrow. We'll **watch / be watching** a football match at the stadium.
5- Do you think you'll **miss / be missing** your school friends when you go to university?

2- The Future Perfect (Finished in The Future)

Form: شكل الزمن

will + have + V3



Example:

- We're late! By the time we get to the station, the train will have gone.

Usage: استخدامات هذا الزمن

- to talk about an action that will be completed by a particular time in the future.

- نستخدم هذا الزمن للكلام عن حدث سيكون قد انتهى قبل حدوث شيء آخر في المستقبل.

- By 2019 CE, the new motorway will have opened.

- This time tomorrow, I'll have finished studying unit three.

الكلمات الدالة أو الظروف الخاصة بهذا الزمن (Adverbs of time)

by the end of this year / by this time tomorrow / in two years' time / in July next year / in

another five months / this time next month / by the end of the week / by next year

by + ساعة محددة / by the time / by 2019 CE / this time tomorrow / by the end of the week / by next year / next month / next Monday / by then / by now

How to Make Negation:

نضع بعد الفعل المساعد الأول (will) أداة النفي (not) أو نستخدم (won't) ونكمل القاعدة كما هو موضح:

S+ (won't) will + not + have + V3

- I'll have finished studying unit three this time tomorrow.

- I won't have finished studying unit three by this time tomorrow.

How to Make Questions:

لعمل السؤال، قم بوضع الفعل المساعد الأول (will) في بداية الجملة وسويها كبيتال ومن ثم ضع/عي علامة السؤال في آخر الجملة

Will + S. + have + V3

- You will have finished studying unit three this time tomorrow.

- Will you have finished studying unit three by this time tomorrow?

Exercise 14: Complete the sentences with the Future Perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

1- This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we our exams. (finish)

2- This time next month, my parents married for twenty years. (be)

3- The books that you ordered by the end of the week. (not arrive)

4- By next year, you England? (visit)

Exercise 15: There is one mistake in the verb tenses in each of the four conversations below.

Underline the mistake and rewrite the verb in the correct tense.

1- A: What do you think you will be doing in two years' time?

B: I think I will be living in Karak, and I will study Geography.

2- A: Don't phone me at seven. I'll have dinner with my family.

B: OK, I'll phone at nine.

.....

3- A: What time will you get here tomorrow?

B: At about three, I think. I'll be texting you the exact time later.

.....

4- A: Please be quiet when you come home tonight. The baby will sleep.

B: Don't worry. I won't forget.

.....

Exercise 16: Complete the sentences in the Future Perfect or the Future Continuous.

1- (2016) Next month, we / live / in this house for a year. Let's celebrate!

.....

- في الإمتحان الوزاري، جاء هذا السؤال نصاً حرفياً على شكل صحح الفعل:

- Next month, our family in this house for a year. **(have / live)**

والذي يمتلك نفس حل الفرع السابق من هذا السؤال.

2- Next Monday, I / work / in my new job.

.....

3- you / do / all your homework by eight o'clock?

.....

4- It's three o'clock now, so Miriam's flight / arrive / at Queen Alia International Airport.

.....

5- you / meet us / at the library this afternoon?

.....

6- You can borrow this book tomorrow. I / finish / it by then.

.....

3- hope, plan and intend

- I hope to go to Australia next year.
- I plan to learn French soon.
- I intend to go shopping at the weekend.

- هذه الأفعال (**hope**) والتي تعني (يأمل) و (**plan**) والتي تعني (يخطط ل) و (**intend**) والتي تعني (ينوي) تستخدم في الزمن المضارع البسيط متبوعة ب (to) ولكنها تدل على المستقبل فلا نقول:

- I will hope.

- الوظيفة اللغوية لهذه الأفعال تكون:

- Using the Present Simple of these verbs to talk about the future.

Examples:

- 1- I **intend** to study Medicine at university. Then I **hope** to work in hospital near my home town.
- 2- I **hope** to be an engineer one day. I'm **planning** to get some work experience before I go to university.
- 3- I **hope** to do well in my exams this year. Then I **intend** to go to university and study Archaeology.
- 4- I **plan** to go abroad when I leave school. I **intend** to improve my English. Then I **hope** to return to Jordan and get a good job.

Exercise 1: Make correct sentences about the future.

1- He / hope / become a teacher one day.

.....

2- I / intend / apply for a job when I finish university.

.....

3- Many hospitals / plan / use robots to help nurses in the future.

.....

4- How / you / intend / solve the problem?

.....

5- Our school / hope / raise enough money to build a new library.

.....

6- you / intend / buy tickets for the play?

.....

- ممكن أن يأتي هذا السؤال على شكل معاني أو صحيح الفعل كآزمنة، لاحظ انه يجب عليك استخدام المضارع البسيط لهذه الأفعال.

Writing:

المقالة الوصفية: Descriptive Essay

Writing skills: Using rhetorical devices

Simile:

Some robots will look and sound very like humans, because technology will have advanced a great deal.

Treatment and medicines will taste as delicious as real food.

Metaphor:

The world will be at your fingertips.

Onomatopoeia:

Everywhere we go we will hear the constant buzz and hum of technology.

Personification:

Our computers and mobile phones will take care of us, by telling us when to wake up, eat and sleep.

- كغيرها من المقالات، تُقسم المقالة الوصفية إلى ثلاثة أقسام:

1- الفقرة الأولى (introduction and personal

viewpoint المقدمة والرأي الشخصي: وفيها ضع/ي مقدمة ورأيك الشخصي في حدود ثلاث جمل.

2- الفقرة الثانية وهي الأطول (more detailed

descriptions): وفيها وصف مفصل لما يطلبه السؤال حسب الترتيب المنطقي الذي يراه الطالب. وضع/ي فيه تشبيهات ووصف والعديد من التفاصيل.

3- الفقرة الثالثة والأخيرة (conclusion and personal

viewpoint): ضع/ي فيها الخاتمة وهو تلخيص قصير لما سبق ذكره ورأي شخصي بالإضافة إلى تساؤل أو اقتراح.

إليك مثال مقترح على هذه المقالة من الكتاب:

Worldwide transport in the future

It is of course difficult to say exactly what transportation will look like in the future, because of the infrastructural changes that are happening constantly at the moment. To me, it seems that transport may well have changed a lot in one hundred years' time.

Perhaps there will be no more private transport by 2115 CE. It is possible that public transport will have improved so much that no one will need their own cars. We might all be zooming around in ecologically-sound electric buses and trams that will take us to our destinations smoothly!

In order to get to other countries, we will be taking airships, which will be like aeroplanes but with more facilities available. It will be possible to travel to the other side of the world in much less time, because these airships will race around at a far greater velocity.

Finally, modes of transport are always changing, depending on many different factors, but one thing is certain; we will still be travelling the whole world! We might even be able to experience weightlessness by travelling to space!

هسه دورك/ي:

Exercise 18: Think of three ways in which people will be living in the future. Write about 120 words. Consider three of the following: • at home • in a hospital • at school • at work.

Blank lined paper with horizontal ruling lines.

Handwriting practice sheet with horizontal lines and a large, faint watermark reading 'أحمد' (Ahmed) diagonally across the page.

أهلاً بالأساتذة

أحمد المصطفى

Unit Three Answers:

Ex1: 1- limb 2- prosthetic 3- equipment 4- sponsor

Ex2: 1- Because the boy (Adeeb) caught Sheikh Hamdan's attention with his invention – a prosthetic limb for his father.

2- Adeeb got the idea for a special kind of prosthetic leg while he was at the beach with his family. His father, who wears an artificial leg, could not swim in the sea as he could not risk getting his leg wet.

3- He will be staying with relatives. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build the appendage. He will also be attending a course on prosthetics and learning about different kinds of medical apparatus.

4- Against. // 5- It is so helpful in case of an emergency, this device will communicate with rescue services and the driver's family and inform them about the case the driver has.

6- The Sheikh hopes the tour that he is sponsoring for Adeeb will give the young inventor more self-confidence and inspire other young Emirati inventors.

7- Adeeb is ten years old.

8- Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad is the Crown Prince of Dubai.

9- I think Adeeb's father has lost his leg in a car accident.

10- The father refused to swim because he could not risk getting his leg wet.

11- Adeeb is going to visit the USA, France, the UK, Ireland, Belgium, Italy and Germany, where he will be staying with relatives.

12- No, he will not. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build the appendage. He will also be attending a course on prosthetics and learning about different kinds of medical apparatus.

13- Adeeb has invented several devices, including a tiny cleaning robot, a heart monitor and a fireproof helmet.

14- Sponsoring genius people has many advantages such as: They can leave their work and work more on their ideas, they also have enough money for research.

15- Adeeb used a built-in camera system which will help rescue workers in emergencies.

16- Adeeb rightly deserved his reputation as one of the youngest inventors in the world.

17-

Word	Reference
which	a tour
his /his	the boy
he	The Sheikh
he/his /His	Adeeb
who/he/his	His father
where	Germany
he/he/he	Adeeb
which	a heart monitor
He	Adeeb
which	This special equipment
his	Adeeb

Ex3: 1-side effect 2- coma 3- symptoms 4-cancer 5- dementia

Ex4: 1- If people live longer, there will be shortage in services such as healthcare and education. We should be utilizing technology to make other life aspects easier.

2- They improve vision or allow disabled people to use their thoughts in order to control prosthetic limbs like arms, legs or hands, or operate a wheelchair.

3- arms, legs فقط اليدين

4- Yes, it will be possible to communicate with people who are in a coma by using a special brain scanner called an MRI.

5- MRI stands for (Magnetic Resonance Imaging).

6- Neuroscientists confirmed that it was possible to communicate with some patients in a coma, by using a special brain (3) scanner called an MRI. They suggested that, in the future, more meaningful dialogue with patients in a coma would be possible. Two years later, it has finally happened.

7- Doctors plan to use similar brain-scanning techniques in the future to find out whether patients are in pain, or what they would like to be done in order to improve their quality of life.

8- A new cancer drug is being trialled in Plymouth, UK, which doctors hope will extend the lives of cancer patients and reduce their symptoms overnight.

9- Other forms of cancer treatment have side effects such as the sickness and hair loss that are experienced when undergoing usual cancer treatment.

10- The new treatment works by blocking a protein which causes cancerous cells to grow.

11. The patients were interviewed a year after starting the treatment and are fit and well, saying that they are definitely going to continue the trial.

12- I think cancer patients agree to undergo new types of treatment because they have already suffered from old treatments and they believe it might help.

13- I think they will want to know about their family members, they also might wish to get news about work and life.

14-

Word	Reference
that	brain implants
their	disabled people
their	monkeys
who	people
which	brain damage
They	neuroscientists
who/ he	a man
they/ their	patients
which	A new cancer drug
their	cancer patients
It	A new cancer drug
which	a protein
they/ They	The patients
it	A new cancer drug

Ex5: 1- paediatric 2- radiotherapy 3- ward 4- outpatient.

- Ex6:** 1- The King Hussein Cancer Center is Jordan's only comprehensive cancer treatment centre. It treats both adult and paediatric patients. For the previously mentioned reasons and because the population of the country increases, more and more families will rely on the hospital for cancer treatment so it needs to expand
- 2- Patients come from other countries in the region, as they are attracted by the hospital's excellent reputation, lower costs, and cultural and language similarities.
- 3- The journey to and from the hospital is often difficult.
- 4- There are plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan. In the near future, King Abdullah University Hospital in Irbid hopes to set up radiotherapy machines, so that cancer patients from northern Jordan will not have to go to Amman for radiotherapy treatment.
- 5- The King Hussein Cancer Center.
- 6- People come from other countries to get medical treatment.
- 7- The KHCC has begun an expansion programme. There are other plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan.
- 8- Paediatric: describing the area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses.
- 9- The hospital's capacity is 3,500 per year.
- 10- They will have added 182 extra beds, along with bigger units for different departments, including radiotherapy. New adult and paediatric wards will have opened. Additionally, they will have built a special ten-floor outpatients' building.
- 11- Many cancer patients live far away from Amman, where the KHCC is located, and the journey to and from the hospital is often difficult. For this reason, there are plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan.
- 12- Cancer patients from northern Jordan will not have to go to Amman for radiotherapy treatment.
- 13- King Abdullah University Hospital is located in Irbid.
- 14- The education centre includes teaching rooms and a library.
- 15-

Word	Reference
It	The King Hussein Cancer Center
they	Patients
Its	The hospital
which	an education centre
where	far away from Amman

- 16- Patients come not only from Jordan but also from other countries in the region.
- 17- Yes, I agree with this quotation because doctors depend on love to strengthen their relationships with their patients and that is so helpful in curing diseases.

Ex7: 1- cross 2- publicise 3- bionic.

- Ex8:** 1- Scientists have successfully invented a prosthetic hand with a sense of touch.
- 2- Dennis needs that new hand because he had lost his left hand.
- 3- He is using his old one because the new is not ready for general use yet.

4-

<u>Word</u>	<u>Reference</u>
it\which	a prosthetic hand
they	scientists
he	Dennis Sorensen
which\it	the new hand
he	Sorensen
them	objects
I/he/his/he	Sorensen
it	the equipment
he\his\he\he\He	Sorensen
who\them\their	thousands of people

5- artificial.

6- The new artificial hand has a sense of touch.

7- Dennis Sorensen, a 39-year-old from Denmark, was the first person to try out the new invention. /////////////// 8- He had been using a standard prosthetic hand for nine years.

10- Sorensen could pick up and manipulate objects, he could also feel them.

11- HE could not use it forever because he was only taking part in trials, and the equipment is not ready for general use yet.

12- I would easily agree to go through such an experiment because I have nothing to lose. I will also be helping others by tying this artificial arm.

Ex9: 1- spend 2- attend 3- got 4- catch

Ex10: 1- I like spending time with my best friend. 2- I took interest in football years ago.

3- I got the idea of a car working on water from a magazine.

Ex11: 1- A- will you be having B- will not be having \ will be watching \ will be preparing.

2- A- you will be doing \will you be working or will you be doing. B- will not (won't) be working \ will still be studying.

Ex12: 1- will be travelling 2- will be reading 3- will be practicing 4- Will ...be having 5- will not (won't) be playing 6- will be sitting.

Ex13: 1-be staying 2- help 3- be boarding 4- be watching 5- miss

Ex14: 1- will have finished 2- will have been 3- will not have arrived 4- will have visited.

Ex15: 1- will be studying 2- will be having 3- will text 4- will be sleeping

Ex16: 1- Next month, we will have lived in this house for a year. Let's celebrate!

2- Next Monday, I will be working in my new job.

3- Will you have done all your homework by eight o'clock?

4- It's three o'clock now, so Miriam's flight will have arrived at Queen Alia International Airport.

5- Will you be meeting us at the library this afternoon?

6- You can borrow this book tomorrow. I'll have finished it by then.

Hope, Plan and Intend Ex1: 1- He hopes to become a teacher one day. 2- I intend to apply for a job when I finish university. 3- Many hospitals plan to use robots to help nurses in the future. 4- How do you intend to solve the problem? 5- Our school hopes to raise enough money to build a new library. 6- Do you intend to buy tickets for the play?

Module Three
Unit Four :Success Stories (الوحدة الرابعة ثلاث قطع)

- Vocabulary

إحفظ هذه الكلمات بالعربي لأنها تفيدك في الوحدة بشكل عام كالتعبير وسؤال المعاني والتفكير الناقد (Critical Thinking):

المعنى بالعربية	Word	المعنى بالعربية	Word	المعنى بالعربية
اشرف على	29- supervised	شطرنج	1- chess	
استثمار	30- investment	طواحين هواء	2- windmills	
ذا موهبة	31- talented	علم الجبر	3- algebra	
معروف جيداً	32- well-known	صابون	4- soap	
اسس	33- established	قلم حبر	5- fountain pen	
فلكي	34- astronomer	زجاج كريستال	6- crystal glass	
ثري	35- wealthy	يلقح	7- inoculation	
طرق	36- motorways	صك او شيك	8- cheques	
تعريف	37- definition	سجاده	9- carpet	
كيميائي	38- chemists	قهوة	10- coffee	
مؤسسة	39- Institute	فائدة	11- benefit	
نفايات	40- waste	اثر القدم	12- footprint	
حرا بدون	41- free	ودود	13- friendly	
		محايد/يدون	14- neutral	
		مشاة	15- pedestrian	
		متجدد	16- renewable	
		له وزنه	17- weighed	
		يفوق في الاهمية	18- outweigh	
		خصب	19- fertile	
		تعليمات	20- instructions	
		الزراعة	21- agriculture	
		تألف من	22- consisted	
		شغف	23- passions	
		حلول	24- solution(s)	
		ري	27- irrigation	
مؤسس	40- founder	مقاييس	28- scales	
a person who starts something new such as an organization		an instrument to measure weight		

إحفظ انجليزي-انجليزي-عربي:

المعنى بالعربي	English Meaning	Word
علم الحساب	the branch of mathematics concerned with numerical calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division	arithmetic (n)
علم الهندسة	the branch of mathematics concerned with the properties, relationships and measurement of points, lines, curves and surfaces	geometry (n) geometric (adj) geometrically (adv)

mathematician (n) mathematics (n) mathematical (adj)	a person who studies Mathematics to a very complex level	مختص بالرياضيات
philosopher (n) philosophise (v) philosophical (adj)	someone who studies and writes philosophy professionally, or an undergraduate student of Philosophy	فيلسوف
physician (n)	someone qualified to practise medicine, especially one who specialises in diagnosis and treatment	طبيب
polymath (n)	someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects	شخص موسوعي
ground-breaking (adj) break (v)	new, innovative	جديد/خلاق
inheritance (noun) inherit (verb)	money or things that you get from someone after they die	ارث
revolutionise (verb) revolution (noun) revolutionary (adj)	to completely change the way people do something or think about something	عمل ثورة
composition (noun) compose (verb)	[of music] a piece of music that someone has written	تأليف
algebra (noun) algebraic (adjective)	a type of mathematics system where letters and symbols are used to represent numbers	علم الجبر
musical harmony (n) harmonious (adj) harmonise (verb)	a pleasant sound in music, made by playing or singing a group of different notes together	تناغم موسيقي
minaret (noun)	the tall, thin tower of a mosque from which Muslims are called to prayer	مائدة
camera obscura (n)	Latin for 'dark room'; an optical device that led to photography and the invention of the camera	الغرفة المعتمة

Exercise 1: Complete the following sentences with words from the table above:

- 1- Engineers attend many lessons before they graduate.
- 2- A is someone who studies, teaches or is an expert in mathematics.
- 3- Ali is a; he knows a lot about many different subjects.

Unit Four Text One: The importance of Islamic achievements in history

أهمية الإنجازات الإسلامية في التاريخ

Jabir ibn Hayyan (born 722 CE, died 815 CE)

The Arab world has many famous chemists in its history, but the person **who** is known as the founder of chemistry is probably Jabir ibn Hayyan. **He** is most well-known for the beginning of the production of sulphuric acid. He also built a set of scales **which** changed the way in which chemists weighed items in a laboratory: his scales could weigh items over 6,000 times smaller than a kilogram.

جابر ابن حيان: يمتلك العالم العربي العديد من الكيميائيين المشهورين في تاريخه، ولكن جابر بن حيان هو الشخص المتوقع والمعروف بأنه مؤسس علم الكيمياء. إنه الشخص المعروف جيداً بأنه قد بدأ بإنتاج حامض الكبريتيك. وهو الذي بنى مجموعة مقاييس غيرت الطريقة التي يزن بها الكيميائيون المواد في المختبر: يستطيع مقياسه أن يزن أجساماً أقل من الكيلو غرام بـ 6000 مرة.

Ali ibn Nafi' (Ziryab) (born 789 CE, died 857 CE)

Ali ibn Nafi' is also known as 'Ziryab' (or 'Blackbird', because of his beautiful voice). **He** was a gifted pupil of a famous musician from Baghdad, and it was his talent for music that led him to Cordoba in the ninth century CE. He was the guest of the Umayyad ruler **there**. **He** is the person **who** established the first music school in the world in Cordoba, Al-Andalus, teaching musical harmony and composition. He revolutionised musical theory, and is also the person **who** introduced the oud to Europe.

علي بن نافع (زرياب): لي بن نافع معروف أيضاً بزرياب أو الطائر الأسود بسبب صوته الجميل. لقد كان طالباً موهوباً عند موسيقي من بغداد، ولقد قادته موهبته الموسيقية إلى قرطبة في القرن التاسع. لقد كان ضيف الحاكم الأموي هناك. وهو الشخص الذي أسس أول مدرسة موسيقية في العالم في قرطبة، الأندلس، يُدرس التناغم الموسيقي وتأليف الموسيقى. لقد أحدث تغييراً جذرياً في النظرية الموسيقية وهو الشخص الذي أدخل العود لأوروبا.

Fatima al-Fihri (born early 9th century, died 880 CE)

Fatima al-Fihri was the daughter of a wealthy businessman. **She** used **her** father's inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco. This learning centre became Morocco's top university, and it is **where** many students from all over the world come to study. Moreover, it was Fatima's sister, Mariam, **who** supervised the building of the Andalus **Mosque**, **which** was not far from the learning centre.

فاطمة الفهري هي ابنة رجل أعمال ثري. استخدمت ميراث والدها لبناء مركز تعليمي في فز-المغرب. هذا المركز التعليمي أصبح الجامعة الأولى في المغرب حيث يتهاافت الكثير من الطلاب للدراسة فيها من مختلف أنحاء العالم. وعلاوة على ذلك فقد أشرفت اختها مريم على بناء مسجد الأندلس والذي لم يكن بعيداً عن مركز التعلم هذا.

Al-Kindi (born around 801 CE, died 873 CE)

Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, mathematician, chemist, musician and astronomer – a true polymath. **He** made ground-breaking discoveries in many of these fields, but it is probably his work in arithmetic and geometry that has made **him** most famous.

الكندي: كان الكندي طبيباً وفيلسوفاً وعالم رياضيات وكيميائياً، موسيقاراً وعالم الفلك. لقد كان متعدد المعرفة بحق. لقد أحرز اكتشافات وسعت الآفاق في أغلب هذه المجالات. ولكن عمله في علم الحساب والهندسة جعله مشهوراً جداً.

Exercise 2: Now answer the following questions:

1- Quote the sentence which indicates that an Arab musician introduced the oud to Europe.

.....

2- Do you think that it was easier or more difficult in those days to reach such high levels of achievement in comparison with the present day? Give a reason for your opinion.

.....

.....

3- Who is probably the founder of chemistry?

4- What was Al-Kindi?

.....

5- What is Jabir ibn Hayyan famous for?

.....

6- What does the bolded pronoun “**which**” in the first paragraph refer to?

7- Who supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque?

.....

8- What is the noble thing that Fatima al-Fihri did?

.....

9- What made Al-Kindi most famous?

.....

10- What does the underlined/bolded word “mosque” mean?

.....

11- Why was Ali ibn Nafi’ called “Ziryab (or ‘Blackbird’)”?

.....

12- (Critical Thinking) Arab scholars have made a tremendous contribution to the world.

Suggest two other discoveries that was made by other Arab or Muslim scientists, use your research engine to find some of these.

.....

.....

13- Which successful person has influenced you the most in your life and why?

.....

14- Which person in the previous text do you think was the most successful and why?

.....

.....

15- How would you define success? (Start your answer by “The way in which ...”)

.....
.....

16- Do you think that there is anything positive to be done by you to make you famous and influence the world? What would it be?

.....

17- List all the pronouns and their references.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Unit Four Text Two		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
economic growth		النمو الاقتصادي
negative effect		التأثير السلبي
public transport		النقل العام
carbon footprint		الانبعاثات الكربونية
biological waste		النفايات البيولوجية (الحيوية)
urban planning		التخطيط الحضري
grid (n)	[energy grid] a system of wires through which electricity is connected to different power stations across a region	شبكة
artificially-created (adj) create (verb) creation (noun)	not real or not made of natural things but made to be like something that is real or natural	صناعي
zero-waste (adjective)	producing no waste, or having parts that can be reused	بدون نفايات
outweigh (verb)	to be more important than something else	فاق في الاهمية
windmill (noun)	a building that uses its sails and wind power to grind corn into flour	صاحونة هوائية
vary (verb) variation (noun) variable (adjective)	to differ according to the situation	يتنوع/يتفاوت
pedestrian (noun) pedestrian (adjective)	someone who is walking, especially along a street or another place that is used by cars	مشاة
megaproject (noun)	a very large, expensive, ambitious business project	مشاريع عملاقة
sustainability (noun) sustain (verb) sustainable (adjective)	the state of being able to continue forever, or for a very long time; for example, the sustainability of the environment involves emitting less pollution and using less water	الديمومة/الاستدامة
desalination (noun) desalinate (verb)	the process of removing salt from sea water so that it can be used	تحلية مياه البحر
carbon-neutral (adj) neutralise (verb) neutrality (noun)	not affecting the total amount of carbon dioxide in Earth's atmosphere	بدون انبعاثات كربونية
criticise (verb) critic, criticism (noun) critical (adjective)	to judge (something) with disapproval; to evaluate or analyse (something)	ينتقد

Exercise 3: Complete the sentences with the correct collocations from the table above.

- 1- When people talk about, they can mean either an improvement in the average standard of living, or an increase in the value of a country's products.
- 2- Pollution has some seriouson the environment, such as the death of wildlife and plant life.
- 3- We can all work hard to reduce our by living a more environmentally-friendly lifestyle.
- 4- If we takemore often, there will be fewer cars on the roads, which will result in cleaner air in our cities.
- 5- Hospitals need to dispose of a lot of, and it should be carefully managed because it can be dangerous.

Unit Four Text Two: Masdar City – a positive step? (2016)

مدينة مصدر - خطوة إيجابية

Megaprojects are extremely large investment projects, **which** are designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities. Although megaprojects vary in terms of size and cost, **they** are all, by definition, expensive, public projects **that** attract a high level of interest and media coverage. Projects range from motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.

هذه المشاريع العملاقة هي استثمارات كبيرة جداً والتي تم تصميمها لتشجيع النمو الاقتصادي وجلب فوائد جديدة للمدن. وبالرغم أن هذه المشاريع العملاقة تختلف من حيث الحجم والتكلفة، لكنها كلها مشاريع عامة مكلفة تجلب الاهتمام والتغطية الإعلامية. تتراوح المشاريع من طرق ومطارات ومحطات وأنفاق وجسور، الخ. إلى مجمعات سكنية على مستوى المدينة.

The concept of a megaproject is always based on the benefits **it** brings to a community. However, many megaprojects have been criticised because of **their** negative effects on a community or the environment. This essay will look at these issues with regard to Masdar City, a megaproject in Abu Dhabi.

يعتمد مبدأ المشاريع العملاقة على المنافع التي سيجلبها لمجتمع ما. ولكن الكثير منها تم انتقاده بسبب تأثيراتها السلبية على المجتمع أو على البيئة. ستمعن هذه المقالة النظر في هذه الأمور من حيث تناولها مدينة مصدر - مدينة في أبو ظبي.

Masdar City, which began its development in 2006 CE, will be the world's first carbon-neutral, zero waste artificially-created city. Covering an area of six square kilometres, when **it** is completed in 2025 CE, it is expected to house more than 40,000 residents, 50,000 commuters, and 1,500 businesses involved in mainly environmentally-friendly products.

سكنون مدينة مصدر والتي بدأ تطويرها عام 2006 أول مدينة تم صنعها لتكون خالية من الكربون ومنعدمة النفايات. مغطى ما مساحته ست كيلو مترات مربعة وعندما يتم إكمالها في عام 2025، من المتوقع أن تحوي أكثر من 40,000 ساكن و 50,000 عابر و 1500 شركة تعمل في منتجات صديقة للبيئة.

The city will run entirely on renewable energy sources. It is built on an advanced energy grid **which** monitors exactly how much electricity is being used by every outlet in the complex. Furthermore, in order to reduce its carbon footprint, Masdar City will be a car-free zone, designed to be pedestrian and cycle-friendly. Electric, driverless cars will operate as public

transport vehicles, and the city will be connected to other locations by a network of roads and railways.

ستعمل المدينة بشكل كامل على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة. فهي مبنية على شبكة طاقة متقدمة والتي تراقب كمية الطاقة المستخدمة بالضبط من قبل كل قابس في المجمع السكني. وللتقليل من الانبعاث الكربوني، ستكون مدينة مصدر خالية من السيارات مصممة للمشاة وتشجع ركوب الدراجات. ستعمل المركبات الكهربائية التي تعمل بدون سائق كمركبات للنقل العام وستكون المدينة متصلة بمواقع أخرى عن طريق سلسلة من الطرق والسكك الحديدية.

Energy will be provided by solar power and wind farms, and there are also plans to build the world's largest hydrogen plant. A desalination plant will be used to provide the city's water, with 80% of water used being recycled. **Biological waste** will be used as an energy source too, and industrial waste will be recycled.

سيتم تزويد بالطاقة بواسطة الطاقة الشمسية ومزارع المراوح الهوائية، وهناك أيضاً خطط لبناء أكبر مصنع للهيدروجين في العالم. سيتم تزويد المدينة بالماء عن طريق محطة لتحلية المياه، وسيتم تدوير 80% من هذه المياه. سيتم استخدام النفايات الحيوية (البيولوجية) كمصدر للطاقة أيضاً. وسيتم تدوير النفايات الصناعية.

The current residents of Masdar City are all students at the Masdar Institute of Science and Technology, a university **whose** students are fully committed to finding solutions to the world's energy problems.

سكان مدينة مصدر الحاليون هم كلهم طلاب في مؤسسة مصدر للعلوم والتكنولوجيا، جامعة طلابها ملتزمون تماماً بإيجاد حلول لمشاكل العالم المتعلقة بالطاقة.

While the project has the support of many global, environmental and conservation organisations, there is some criticism of **it**. It is felt that, instead of building an artificial sustainable city, sustainability should be made a priority of existing cities.

يحظى المشروع بدعم العديد من المنظمات العالمية البيئية منها والمحافظة، لكن هناك بعض الانتقادات له. يشعر الناس أنه وبدلاً من القيام بإنشاء مدينة صناعية مستدامة، يجب أن تكون الإستدامة أولوية للمدن الموجودة.

In conclusion, the benefits of Masdar City for the community and the environment greatly outweigh any disadvantages. If the aims of the developers are realised, Masdar City will be a blueprint for future urban planning **that** will inspire similar megaprojects in other countries.

وفي الختام، تغلب المنفعة الخاصة بمدينة مصدر للمجتمع والبيئة أي مساوئ. إذا تم ادراك وتحقيق اهداف المطورين لهذه المدينة، ستكون بمثابة مخطط للتخطيط الحضري المستقبلي وستلهم مشاريع ضخمة أخرى في دول أخرى.

Exercise 4: Answer the following questions:

1- What are megaprojects and why do they exist? What are –in your opinion- the advantages and disadvantages of such projects to people and the environment?

.....

2-According to the text, especially the first paragraph, why are megaprojects designed?

.....

3- Why are many megaprojects criticised?

.....

4- How will Masdar city reduce its carbon footprint?

.....

5- What does the underlined/bolded phrase “**Biological waste**” mean?

6- What will happen if the aims of the developers are realized?

7- Critical Thinking: What do you think is the aim of building such cities? Suggest three specific benefits of such cities.

8- What do “hydrogen plants” do?

9- Do you wish to live in Masdar City? Why? Why not?

10- What is the size of this project and how many people will it house?

11- What examples of megaprojects are provided in the essay?

12- What are the advantages of the creation of Masdar City? What are the disadvantages?

13- Do you think that Masdar City is a beneficial project or not? Give your reasons.

14- Do you think that a similar project to Masdar City would be successful in Jordan? What advantages and disadvantages can you think of?

15- List all the pronouns and decide to which they refer.

Unit Four Text Three		
Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
irrigate (verb) irrigation (noun)	to supply land with water so that crops and plants will grow	يروي
inoculation (noun) inoculate (verb) inoculable (adj)	an injection you can have to protect you from a disease	التلقيح
fountain pen (noun)	a pen which needs ink cartridge refills and the nib of which takes ink from these cartridges to write	قلم حبر

Exercise 5: Choose words from the table above to fill the gaps in the following sentences:

- 1- The invention of the was a great revolution.
- 2- is the same as immunisation.
- 3- Farmers should their plants regularly so that they can easily grow up.

Unit Four Text Three: A founding father of farming

الأب المؤسس للزراعة

Ibn Bassal was a writer, a scientist and an engineer **who** lived in Al-Andalus in the eleventh century CE. He worked in the court of Al-Ma'mun, (1) **who** was the king of Toledo. **His** great passions were botany, (2) **which** is the study of plants, and agriculture. Although he was a great scholar, he was also a practical man and all of his writing came from his own 'hands-on' experience of working the land.

كان ابن باسل كاتباً، عالماً ومهندساً عاش في الأندلس في القرن الحادي عشر للميلاد. لقد عمل في بلاط المأمون والذي كان ملكاً توليداً. كان كل شغفه دراسة علم النبات والزراعة. بالرغم من كونه عالماً عظيماً فقد كان رجلاً عملياً وقد أتت كل كتاباته من خبرته العملية في العمل في الأرض.

One of the many things **which** Ibn Bassal achieved was A Book of Agriculture. The book consisted of sixteen chapters **which** explain how best to grow trees, fruit and vegetables, as well as herbs and sweet-smelling flowers; perhaps the most famous chapter of all was the one (3) that described how to treat different types of soil. Ibn Bassal also worked out how to irrigate the land by finding underground water and digging wells. **He** designed water pumps and irrigation systems. All of these things were passed on through **his** writing.

كان كتاب الزراعة أحد الأشياء التي حققها ابن باسل. يتكون الكتاب من ست عشرة فصل والتي تشرح كيفية زراعة الأشجار والفواكه والخضروات والأعشاب والأزهار ذات الرائحة الجميلة بالطريقة الفضلى. ربما كان الفصل الأفضل هو الفصل الذي يشرح كيفية التعامل مع الأنواع المختلفة من التربة. وقد بحث ابن باسل كيفية ري الأرض عن طريق إيجاد المياه الجوفية وحفر الآبار. لقد صمم مضخات للمياه وأنظمة ري. لقد مرر هذه الأشياء إلينا عن طريق كتاباته.

The influence of Ibn Bassal's book was enormous. As farmers down the generations followed his instructions and advice, the land became wonderfully fertile and produced more than enough food for the fast-growing population. The irrigation systems (4) **that** he and his followers put in place are still in evidence in Spain. Although his name is not widely known, Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world has been great.

كان تأثير كتاب ابن باسل عظيماً. كما قد تباع المزارعون وعبر تواتر الأجيال تعليماته ونصائحه، فقد أصبحت الأرض خصبة بشكل مذهل و أنتجت غذاء أكثر من اللازم لعدد السكان الأخذ بالتزايد. أنظمة الري التي نفذها وأصدقائه لا تزال حاضرة في إسبانيا. لقد كان إرث ابن الباسل للعالم عظيم بالرغم من أن اسمه ليس بمعروف بشكل واسع.

Exercise 6: Now, answer the following questions:

- 1- Name two of Ibn Bassal's achievements.
.....
- 2- Find a verb in the second paragraph that means 'supply land with water'.
- 3- Guess the meaning of 'fertile land' in the third paragraph. Which part of the text illustrates its meaning?
.....
- 4- Guess the meaning of 'legacy' in the third paragraph. What does the author suggest is Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world?
.....
- 5- Which paragraph suggests that Ibn Bassal was a polymath? Give examples of his areas of knowledge.
.....
- 6- Why do you think the area around Toledo had a 'fast-growing population'?
.....
.....
- 7- What does the book explain?
.....
- 8- What did Ibn Bassal design and how was that helpful?
.....
- 9- Quote the **sentences** which indicate that people overtime had followed Ibn Bassal's inventions.
.....
.....
- 10- What does the bolded words refer to?
.....

Grammar: 1- Relative Clauses: العبارات الوصفية

1.1- Defining Relative Clauses: العبارات الوصفية المحددة

- العبارات الوصفية المعرفة/المحددة (defining relative clauses) هي عبارات غير مستقلة تصف وتحدد أي شخص / مكان / شيء نتكلم عنه. وتتكون من (Subject + Verb) على الأقل. لاحظ الاسم قبلها غير محدد، أي اسماً عاماً.

The man who broke the window was my uncle.

My uncle was the man who broke the window.

- نضيفها في جمل معقدة فيها عبارة مستقلة (independent /main clause) وأخرى غير مستقلة (subordinate/dependent/relative clause):

- This is the man who stole my bag.

مستقلة

غير مستقلة

Independent

dependent

Main clause

relative

- سميت (relative/subordinate) لأنها تبدأ ب (relative pronouns/subordinate conjunctions) مثل:

- who/that للكلام عن الأشخاص
- which/that لغير العاقل كالأشياء والحيوانات
- where للمكان
- when للزمان
- whose للعاقل للملكية

- أمثلة:

- This is the police officer who shot the criminal.
- This is the school where I studied Tawjihi.
- That is the dog which chased me last night.
- This is the man whose daughter I met in Amman.

- في الأمثلة السابقة، العبارات التي تحتها خط **ضرورية لإتمام المعنى** وتحديد الشخص أو المكان الذي نتحدث عنه لأنه غير محدد أصلاً. فلم نذكر اسم الشرطي ولا المدرسة، العبارة التي تحتها خط تحدد لنا ذلك.

- هذه العبارات **ضرورية لا يمكن إزالتها** لأننا لن نعرف عن نحدث.

- في هذا النوع من العبارات التي من الضروري أن تبقى في الجملة ولا يمكن حذفها، يمكنك فقط حذف الضمير (who/that/which/where) إذا كان مفعولاً به ويكون مفعولاً به إذا لم يتبعه فعل:

- The man who I told you about was my uncle. يمكن حذفه لأن تبعه ضمير ليس فعل.
- The man I told you about was my uncle.
- اما إذا كان فاعلاً فلا يمكن حذفه لأنه متبوع بفعل ويمكن أساسي لإكمال معنى الجملة:
- This is the police officer who shot the criminal.
- This is the police officer XXXXX shot the criminal. خطأ خطأ
- The man who broke the window is insane. لا يمكن حذفه لأنه فاعل

Exercise 7: Use the most suitable relative pronoun to complete each sentence.

(who/that/which/whose/where/when)

- 1- A hotel is a place people stay when they're on holiday.
- 2- What's the name of the woman lives in that house?
- 3- What do you call someone writes computer programs?
- 4- A waiter is a person job is to serve customers in a restaurant.
- 5- Overalls are clothes people wear when they are working.
- 6- Is that the shop you bought your new laptop?
- 7- He's the man son plays football for Manchester Utd.
- 8- Hal didn't get the job he applied for.

Exercise 8: Join these sentences using relative pronouns beginning with the words given. Omit the pronoun if possible.

1- The girl is my sister. I'm talking to the girl.

- The girl who I am talking to is my sister.

.....

2- This is the chair. The carpenter repaired it last week.

- This is the chair

.....

3- She is married to a man. He is richer than her.

- She is married to a man

.....

4- She is the friend. She helped me with my homework.

.....

.....

5- That is the swimming-pool. I used to go swimming there.

.....

.....

6- That is the man. His wife is a famous actress.

.....

.....

7- A doctor examined me last Friday. He was really kind.

.....

.....

8- The woman called the police. Her car had been stolen.

.....

.....

9- I went to a restaurant last week. It was very expensive.

- The restaurant was very expensive.

.....

10- I saw a film last night. It was very interesting.

- The film was very interesting.

.....

11- (2016) Correct the underlined word:

- Most Jordanians are used to the hot weather where we have in summer.

- Most Jordanians are used to the hot weather

1.2- Non-defining Relative Clauses: العبارات الوصفية غير المحددة

- هي عبارات اضافية نضيفها لنعطي معنى اضافي لشخص او مكان او شيء محدد اصلا و معروف:
- Ali, **who** is standing there, took my food. علي علم أي معروف وما بين الفواصل عبارة وصفية إضافية.
- The Sahara Desert, **which** is in Africa, is very hot.
- ترتبط هذه العبارة الوصفية بالجملة نفسها عادةً ب (relative pronoun) مثل (who/which/where/when)
- تختلف العبارة الوصفية غير المحددة (non-defining relative clause) عن العبارة المحددة (defining clause) التي درستها في النقطة السابقة بأنها غير إلزامية اي اذا حذفناها لا يختلف المعنى لانها تعطي معان إضافية:
- The Sahara Desert, **which** is in Africa, is very hot.
- الصحارى هنا معروفة لذلك العبارة التي تحتها خط تعطي معنى اضافي لو حذفنا لا يختلف المعنى:
- The Sahara Desert is very hot.
- العبارة هذه تعطي معنى اضافي كما ذكرت ولو حذفنا لن يختلف المعنى وتكون بين فاصلتين او قوسين كما في المثال السابق. ولكنها تبقى اذا كانت تكمل الجملة (أي بعد فاصلة وسط الجملة) مثل:
-Yesterday I met a woman named Susan, **whose** husband works in London.
- هنا نحن نعرف ان المرأة اسمها سوزان لذلك هي معرفة ولكن العبارة الوصفية التي تحتها خط تكمل معنى الجملة لذلك لا يجوز حذفها.
- في هذه العبارات لا يجوز حذف ال (relative pronouns) (who/which/whose/that/where/when).

Exercise 9: Complete the sentences with whose, who, which, or where. Notice that all clauses are non-defining (can be deleted), rewrite them without these clauses:

- 1- Dublin, is the capital of Ireland, is my favourite city.
.....
- 2- Amelia, mother is from Shanghai, speaks English and Chinese fluently.
.....
- 3-This smartphone, I bought last week, takes great photos.
.....
- 4- Buckingham Palace, the Queen of England lives, is in the centre of London.
.....
- 5- Ferraris, are made in Italy, are very expensive.
.....
- 6- Russell Crowe, starred in Gladiator, was born in New Zealand.
.....
- 7- Mr Kemp, teaches physics, is going to retire next year.
.....

Exercise 10: Join the two sentences with a non-defining relative clause.

1- Crete is popular with British tourists. It's a Greek island.

.....

2- Jennifer Lopez sings pop music. She is married to a rich man.

.....

3- Daniel Craig is afraid of flying. He's the sixth James Bond.

.....

4- Dakar is the capital of Senegal. The famous motor rally ends there.

.....

5- Robert Pattinson was born in London. His films include 'Harry Potter' and the 'Twilight' series.

.....

.....

6- Halloween is a popular UK festival. It is celebrated in October.

.....

Exercise 11: Read the passage below and answer the questions.

"The Giralda tower, which is one of the most important buildings in Seville, Spain, stands at just over 104 metres tall. The person who is believed to be responsible for the design of the tower, which was originally a minaret, is the mathematician and astronomer Jabir ibn Aflah. The architect of the tower was Ahmad Ben Baso, who began work in 1184 CE. He died before the tower was completed in 1198 CE. The design of the tower is believed to be based on the Koutoubia Mosque, which is in Marrakesh, Morocco, and the Hassan Tower in Rabat."

1- Identify the defining and non-defining relative clauses in the text.

- Defining relative clauses are:

.....

.....

.....

- Non-defining relative clauses are:

.....

.....

2- What relative pronouns do we use for the things in the text?

People:

animals and things :

places:

Exercise 12: Complete the text with the correct word from the box. Sometimes, more than one answer is possible.

that / which / where / who

“Qasr Bashir is an extremely well-preserved Roman castle (1)..... is situated in the Jordanian desert, and is about eighty kilometres south of Amman. The walls and huge corner towers of the castle, (2)..... was built at the beginning of the fourth century CE, are still standing. It is thought that Qasr Bashir was built to protect the Roman border. Apart from the rooms in the castle, there are also about twenty-three stables (3)..... horses may have been kept. People (4) love exploring historical Roman ruins will certainly find a visit to Qasr Bashir very rewarding. Once inside the building, one can imagine very vividly what it would have been like to live there during the times of the Roman Empire.

- Identify the defining and non-defining relative clauses in the text.

5- Defining relative clauses are:

.....
.....

6- Non-defining relative clauses are:

.....
.....
.....
.....

Exercise 13: are these relative clauses defining (D) or non-defining (N)?

- 1- London, which is the capital of England, is one of the largest cities in the world.
- 2- This is the dress my mother has made for me.
- 3- Queen Elizabeth II, who is 83, has been the queen of England for 57 years now.
- 4- That's the dog that bit me.
- 5- Tom Cruise, who has starred a lot of films, is an American actor.
- 6- The village where I grew up is very small.
- 7- Greg, whose job involves travelling, has been in all the countries in the world.
- 8- The office I have just rented is near my home.
- 9- This is the officer that arrested the burglar.
- 10- Lady Gaga, who is a well-known pop star, is only 24.

2- Clift Sentences (Clifting) (Emphasise certain pieces of information.)

- هي نوع من العمليات التحويلية التي تتم على الجمل وفيها يتم التركيز على جزء معين من الجملة (المبتدأ / المفعول به / أو الظرف) باستخدام **عبارة وصفية** تتكون من (subject + verb) على الأقل مسبوقة بأحد **ضمائر الوصل** (الوصف) أو يكون الضمير هو المبتدأ.

- **John** lost his **wallet** **yesterday**.

- الجملة التالية تركز في معناها على الفاعل (المبتدأ):

- John was the person **who lost his wallet yesterday**.

- It was John **that lost his wallet yesterday**.

- The person **who lost his wallet yesterday** was John.

نحول اهتمامنا من الفاعل أو المبتدأ للمفعول به بهذه الطريقة:

- John's wallet was **what he lost yesterday**.

- It was John's wallet **that he lost yesterday**.

- **What John lost yesterday** was his wallet.

- The thing **that John lost yesterday** was his wallet.

نحول اهتمامنا على ظرف الزمان كالتالي:

- It was yesterday **that John lost his wallet**.

- Yesterday was the time **when John lost his wallet**.

- The time **when John lost his wallet** was yesterday.

- **Because there are two parts to the sentence it is called cleft (from the verb cleave) which means divided into two.**

- فهذه الجملة هي جمل معقدة فيها عبارة مستقلة (independent / main clause) واخرى غير مستقلة (subordinate/dependent/relative clause):

- **It was his wallet that John lost yesterday.**

مستقلة

غير مستقلة

Independent

dependent

Main clause

relative

- لعمل هذا النوع من الجمل يمكنك استخدام هذه البدايات مع المحافظة على زمن الجملة الأصلي:

The thing that

The person who.....

The time when.....

The place where.....

The way in which.....

The event that / which

What

It.....

مثال:

I would like to go to London.

لاحظ/ي عزيز/تي الطالب/ة انها كلها تتكون من فاعل وفعل:

The thing **that I would like to do** is go to London.

The place **where I would like to go** is London.

What I would like to do is go to London. (مثال الكتاب)

It is London **that I would like to go**.

The person **who/that would like to go to London** is me.

- عندما نبدأ الجملة ب (it) غالبا يكون الضمير في بداية الجملة غير المستقلة (that) وللعاقل يمكن استخدام (who).

Huda won the prize for Art last year.

- **The person who** won the prize for Art last year was Huda. تركيز على الشخص.
- **The prize that** Huda won last year was for Art. تركيز على المفعول به.
- **It was last year that** Huda won the prize for Art. تركيز على ظرف الزمان.
- **It was Huda who/that** won the prize for Art yesterday.

حل المثال التالي يا شطووووووووووووووووووووووووور/ه:

Exercise 14: The Olympic Games were held in London in 2012CE.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
..... ركزلي عالزمن

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
..... ركزلي عالمكان

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
..... ركزلي عالحدث

Exercise 15: We want to emphasise the part of the sentence which is in bold in sentences.

1- The Great Mosque in Cordoba was built in 784 CE by **Abd al-Rahman I**.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2- **The Great Mosque in Cordoba** was built in 784 CE by Abd al-Rahman I.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

3- The Great Mosque in Cordoba was built **in 784 CE** by Abd al-Rahman I.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exercise 16: Write this sentence in three different ways, emphasising the parts underlined in each case.

Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exercise 17: Rewrite these sentences, emphasising the part in bold, and using the structure as shown.

1- **Al-Kindi** contributed to the invention of the oud.

- The person who

2- Jabir ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory **in Iraq**.

- The country where

3- **Ali ibn Nafi** ' established the first music school in the world.

- It was

4- **Jabir ibn Hayyan** also invented ink that can be read in the dark.

- It was

5- Al-Kindi is especially famous for **his work in geometry**.

- It is

6- (2016) Taha Hussain is especially famous for his work in literature.

It is

7- (2016) The first athletic event for disabled athletes took place in 1948.

The year

Exercise 18: Make cleft sentences, stressing the information in bold.

1- **Queen Rania** opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE.

It was Queen Rania

2- Petra was made a World Heritage Site **in 1985 CE**.

The year

3- I stopped working at **11 p.m.**

It was

4- **My father** has influenced me most.

The person

5- I like **Geography** most of all.

The subject

6- **The heat** made the journey unpleasant.

It was

Exercise 19: Make cleft sentences using the given structure:

1- I've come to discuss my future with you.

The reason why

2- Your generosity impresses more than anything else.

The thing that

3- The jewels are hidden under the floor at 23 Robin Hood Road, Epping.

The place

Under the floor at 23 Robin Hood Road

4- Mary works harder than anybody else in this organisation.

The person who

Mary is the person

5- The Second World War ended on 7 May 1945 in Europe.

The day (when)

7 May 1945

6- We now need actions rather than words.

What we now need

Actions rather than words

7- I enjoyed the brilliant music most of all in the Ballet Frankfurt performance.

What I enjoyed most.....

The brilliant music was

3- Derivation: الاشتقاق

هي كيفية اشتقاق الاسم والصفة والظرف والفعل من جذر الكلمة ، هنا الجذر (act) يعطي كل هذه الكلمات:

verb	adjective	noun	adverb
act activate	<u>active</u> <u>activated</u> <u>actionable</u> <u>actual</u>	<u>action</u> <u>act</u> <u>acting</u> <u>activation</u> <u>activist</u> <u>activity</u> <u>actor</u> <u>actress</u>	<u>actively</u> <u>actually</u>

- إذاً، نهايات الكلمات هي التي يمكنك من معرفة اذا ما كانت الكلمة اسم او فعل او صفة او ظرف، لذلك سنحفظها:

noun	adjective	adverb	verb
tion / sion / ism / dom / ment / ure / age / ance / ence / ity / ety / ant / ness / er / or / ress / ist / ship / hood / ee / ency	able / ive / ful / al / ous / ish / en / less / ic / ent / y / ing / ed / ant / ent	ly	ise / ize / ate / fy / en
أمثلة على الاسم	أمثلة على الصفة	أمثلة على الظرف	أمثلة على الفعل

مواقع الاسم	مواقع الصفة	مواقع الظرف	مواقع الفعل
that	that		
a of	a	hV +adv.... + mV	sub +v.... + obj
then..... X	theadj..... n		
an he	an		to +v.....
this	this		
some			can
any	mV +adj.....n		must
			willv.....
mV +n.....	adj adv.....+ adj	could
	tall		might
adj	inefficient		
tall	active	v + n +adv.....	do
inefficient	our +adj.....n		does
active	myadv.....+ v	doesn't + v
our +n.....	their		don't
my	his	v +adv.....	didn't
their	your		adv+..... v.....
his	adv....., الجملة	
your	on	v.....+ adv
	at		نضع افعالا مع الظروف
on	of +adj.....n		في حال عدم وجود فعل
at	in		في الجملة.
of +n.....	into		
in			
into	noun's +adj.....n		S. +v..... + ly
adj..... + n		
noun's +n.....			
noun + noun اسم مركب	so		
	adv+adj.....		
	very		
	نضع صفة بعد الظرف اذا		
	كان موجود فعل في الجملة		
	افعال الربط		
	is/be/were		
	seems/seem		
	grow		
	feel		
	becomes		
	was +adj.....		
	look		
	found		
	taste		
	smells		

يجب حفظ كل هذه الكلمات: كلمات المنهاج على فكرة:

No	Verb (v.)	Noun (n.)	Adjective (adj.)	Adverb (adv.)	المعنى
1-	produce	production producer product	productive	productively	ينتج
2-	medicate	medicine medication	medical	medically	طَب/دواء
3-		nine	ninth		تسعة
4-	inherit	inheritance heritage inheritor	inheritable		يرث
5-	originate	origin originality originator	original	originally	اصلي
6-	invent	invention inventor inventiveness	inventive	inventively	يخترع
7-	discover	discovery discoverer	discovered		يكتشف
8-	influence	influence	influential	influentially	تأثير/يؤثر
9-	translate	translation translator	translated		ترجمة
10-		archaeology archaeologist	archaeological		علم الآثار
11-	appreciate	appreciation	appreciable appreciative appreciated	appreciatively	تقدير
12-	Educate	education educator	educational educative	educationally	يعلم
13-	collect collectivize	collection collector	collectable collective	collectively	يجمع
14-	install	installation installing	installed		تركيب/تنشيت
15-		tradition	traditional	traditionally	تقليدي
16-	weave	weaving	woven		حياكة/أخياطة
17-	attract	attraction	attractive	attractively	جذاب
18-	create	creation creativity creature	creative	creatively	يصنع/يخلق/يعمل
19-	expect	expectancy	expected	expectantly	يتوقع/متوقع
20-	operate	operations	operational	operationally	تشغيلي/يشغل
21-	prescribe	prescription	prescriptive		يصف علاج
22-	infect	infection	infectious	infectiously	يعدى
23-	diagnose	diagnoses	diagnostic		يشخص المرض
24-	intend	intention	intended		ينوي/يقصد

25-		Surgeon surgery	surgical	surgically	جراح / جراحة
26-	believe	believer believing belief	believable		يؤمن
27	succeed	success	successful	successfully	ينجح
28-	conclude	conclusion	concluding		يختتم
29-			extreme	extremely	شديد / فائق
30-	organize	organisation	organized		ينظم
31-		Child/children	childish	childishly	طفل / طفولي
32-	train	training	training		يدرّب / تدريب
33-		person/people	personal	personally	شخص
34-	bring/brought				يجلب
35-		tourism/tourist	touristy		سياحة / سائح

Exercise 20: Complete the sentences with words formed from the words in brackets.

- 1- The Middle East is famous for the of olive oil. (produce)
- 2 Ibn Sina wrote textbooks. (medicine)
- 3- Fatima al-Fihri was born in the century. (nine)
- 4- My father bought our house with an from his grandfather. (inherit)
- 5- Scholars have discovered an document from the twelfth century. (origin)
- 6- Do you think the wheel was the most important ever? (invent)
- 7- Al-Kindi made many important mathematicalies.(discover)
- 8- Who was the most writer of the twentieth century? (influence)
- 9- (2016) The system must be linked with the requirements of social and economic development for any country. (education)
- 10- (2016) Jordan has a of being a friendly and welcoming country. It is one of the safest places to visit in the Middle East. (repute)
- 11- (2016) Many candy advertisement are usually presented in an manner in the TV. (attract)
- 12- (2016) Markets have different types of food which are prepared from animal products. (artificial)

Exercise 21: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

translation / archaeology / appreciation / educate / collect / installation

- 1- Petra is an important site.
- 2- I will be going to university to continue my
- 3- In our exam, we had to a text from Arabic into English.
- 4- They are going to a new air conditioning unit in our flat.
- 5- Thank you for your help, I really it.
- 6- Have you seen Nasser's of postcards? He's got hundreds!

Exercise 22: Chose the correct word and derive it to fill each of the following sentences:

install collect educate appreciation archaeological translation

- 1- Do you have to pay extra for?
- 2- There's quite a of toothbrushes in the bathroom.
- 3- Reducing the size of classes may improve standards.

- 4- I don't think you how much time I spent preparing this meal.
- 5- is the study of the buildings, graves, tools and other objects which belonged to people who lived in the past, in order to learn about their culture and society.
- 6- A a person whose job is changing words into a different language.

Exercise 23: Complete the text with suitable words derived from the words in brackets.

- Madaba is the place where most Jordanian weavers buy their raw materials. Sheep's wool, and goat and camel hair are used by Bedouin tribes and villagers all over Jordan to (1) (product) rugs, bags and other beautiful items. (2) (Traditional), the whole process is done by hand, from the washing of the wool to the finished article. There is a particular Bedouin style of (3) (weave) that buyers find very (4) (attraction). Another craft practised in Madaba is the (5) (creative) of ceramic items.

Exercise 24: Use words to complete each sentence, some words need to be derived.

invent \ discover \ appreciate \ weave \ attract \ create

- 1- She was responsible for the of a new charity.
- 2- There's no point buying him expensive clothes - he doesn't them.
- 3- Petra is one of the greatests in the world.
- 4- Scientists haveed how to predict an earthquake.

Exercise 25: Read the text and complete it using the correct form of the words in the box.

medicine/discover/prescribe/infect/diagnose/intend/surgeon/believe/succeed/conclude

Amazing (1)..... advances are constantly taking place in these days of technological and scientific (2) Many people expect instant cures, and prefer to get a (3) , but it is worth remembering that our immune systems can fight (4) and diseases on their own, too. Research has been done to find out why some people survive cancer. One hundred people who had survived a serious (5) Were interviewed twelve years after they had been diagnosed. The (6) of the study was to discover if there was anything in common with the ways in which they had acted after their diagnosis. They had all used different treatments such as (7) , radiotherapy, acupuncture and special diets. What they all had in common, however, was a strong (8) that what they were doing would be (9) This survey has limited (10) , but one thing it shows is that a positive attitude *can* help your immune system to work.

Exercise 26: Complete the text using the correct form of the words in the box.

traditional / extreme / weave / organise / intend / child / train / person / bring / tourist

On the tiny island of Arran in Scotland, the local people are bringing back an ancient (1) This has proved to be (2) beneficial to the community. The tradition in question is the craft of (3) Until a hundred years ago, weaving was the main profession of the island's women. An (4) , Arran Textiles, was set up a few years ago to offer classes in traditional weaving skills. It was so popular that the project, which had originally been (5) for older women, was extended to include school (6) , younger women and men, too. It has also started offering (7) courses to people who do not live on the island. Arran Textiles has helped (8) who were previously socially isolated, and it has also (9) the added benefits of new business opportunities and support for (10)

فن التلخيص Writing: Summarizing

عند رغبتك بتلخيص مقالة او نص محدد قم بما يلي:

- 1- لخص المحتوى بما لا يزيد عن السطرين.
- 2- حدد الكلمات الرئيسية والتي لا يمكن الإستغناء عنها.
- 3- ارجع للنص وحاول ان تتخلص من التفاصيل.
- 4- لخص كل فقرة بما لا يزيد عن سطر اوسطرين.
- 5- ابدأ بكتابة جمل مختصرة تعتمد على الجمل التي كتبتها.

یا اللہ، دور کم

Exercise27: Write a summary of the article about Masdar City on page 32 (STB).

Remember to be concise and write between 100 and 150 words.

[illegible]

- Name:
- Date:
- Location:
- Occupation and interests:
- Achievements:
- Legacy:

Handwriting practice sheet with horizontal lines and a large, faint watermark reading 'أحمد' (Ahmed) diagonally across the page.

Unit Four Answers

Ex1: 1- geometric 2- mathematician 3- polymath

Ex2: 1- He revolutionised musical theory, and is also the person who introduced the oud to Europe.

2- It was, no doubt, more difficult to reach such high levels of achievements in those old days because there were no advanced technology and everything used to be done manually.

3- Jabir ibn Hayyan is probably the founder of chemistry.

4- Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, mathematician, chemist, musician and astronomer – a true polymath.

5- He is most well-known for the beginning of the production of sulphuric acid.

6- A set of scales.

7- It was Fatima's sister, Mariam, who supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque.

8- She used her father's inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco. This learning centre became Morocco's top university, and it is where many students from all over the world come to study.

9- His work in arithmetic and geometry.

10- "Mosque" is a place where Muslims pray.

11- He was called 'Ziryab' or 'Blackbird' because of his beautiful voice.

12- Other Arab inventors who has left a footprint in the history are "Abu Nasr Al-Farabi", "Ibn Sina" and "Ibn Rushd".

13- 2Pac has influenced me the most because he was so successful and he was singing for the freedom of his people not for his own pleasure or fame.

14- For me, the most successful person in the text is Ziryab, he was so successful and he introduced the oud to Europe. Everyone knows about him.

15- Success is the way in which people do what they have to do in the best way with no or little mistakes.

16- Yes, there are many things I can do to become famous such as studying in a good university and try to invent something useful not only for myself but also for the society.

17-

Pronoun	Reference
who	the person
He	Jabir ibn Hayyan
which	a set of scales
He	Ali ibn Nafi'
there	Cordoba
He	Ali ibn Nafi'
who	the person
who	the person
she/her	Fatima al-Fihri
where	Morocco's top university
who	Mariam
which	Andalus Mosque
He	Al-Kindi
him	Al-Kindi

Ex3: 1- megaproject 2- negative effects 3- carbon footprint 4- public transport 5- biological waste

Ex4:

1- Megaprojects are extremely large investment projects, which are designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities. The advantages of megaprojects are making the environment cleaner and making people's life easier. The disadvantages are expenses and time wasting.

2- Megaprojects are designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities.

3- Many megaprojects have been criticised because of their negative effects on a community or the environment.

4- In order to reduce its carbon footprint, Masdar City will be a car-free zone, designed to be pedestrian and cycle-friendly.

5- Biological waste means waste which contains things which are related to life such as carbon and /or hydrogen.

6- If the aims of the developers are realised, Masdar City will be a blueprint for future urban planning that will inspire similar megaprojects in other countries.

7- I think the aim is to reduce pollution. Other aims could be spreading awareness of the importance of preserving our natural resources and show people how to live economically friendly, megaprojects are so helpful in showing how peaceful human beings could be.

8- It is a way in which scientists produce hydrogen for power.

9- Yes, I would wish to live in Masdar city because it is ideal.

10- It covers an area of six square kilometres. It is expected to house more than 40,000 residents.

11- Examples of megaprojects given in the text are: motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.

12- We can suggest many advantages such as the benefits it brings to a community.

However, many megaprojects have been criticised because of their negative effects on a community or the environment.

13- Masdar City is, by no doubt, a beneficial project that is so helpful because it gives people the chance to achieve a small economically friendly lifestyle.

14- No, we cannot make successful projects such as Masdar City because it will be so expensive and people wouldn't accept the idea itself.

15-

pronoun	reference
which	Megaprojects
they	megaprojects
that	expensive public projects
it	a megaproject
their	many megaprojects
it	Masdar City
which	an advanced energy grid
whose	a university
it	the project
that	Masdar City

Ex5: 1- fountain pen 2- inoculation 3- irrigate

Ex6: 1- Ibn Bassal wrote A Book of Agriculture and also worked out how to irrigate the land by finding underground water and digging wells.

2- Irrigate.

3- "fertile land" describes land that produces more than enough food for the fast-growing population.

4- "legacy" means the things, money or knowledge you get after someone dies.

5- Ibn Bassal was a writer, a scientist and an engineer, this is indicated in the first paragraph.

6- The area had a fast growing population because the situation there was good, food production was great also thanks to Ibn Bassal's inventions.

7- The book explains how best to grow trees, fruit and vegetables, as well as herbs and sweet-smelling flowers.

8- He designed water pumps and irrigation systems.

9- The influence of Ibn Bassal's book was enormous. As farmers down the generations followed his instructions and advice.

10-

Word	Reference
who	Ibn Bassal
who	Al-Ma'mun
His	Ibn Bassal
which	botany
which	things
which	sixteen chapters
He	Ibn Bassal
his	Ibn Bassal
that	The irrigation systems

Ex7: 1- where 2- who/that 3- who/that 4- whose 5-which/that 6- where 7- whose 8- which/that

Ex8: 1- The girl I am talking to is my sister.

2- This is the chair which/that the carpenter repaired last week.

- This is the chair the carpenter repaired last week.

3- She is married to a man who is richer than her.

4- She is the friend who helped me with my homework.

5- That is the swimming pool where I used to go swimming.

- That is the swimming pool I used to go swimming in.

6- that is the man whose wife is a famous actress.

7- The doctor who examined me last night was really kind.

8- The woman whose car had been stolen called the police.

9- The restaurant which I went to was very expensive.

- The restaurant I went to was very expensive.

10- The film which/that I saw last night was very interesting.

- The film I saw last night was very interesting.

11- Most Jordanians are used to the hot weather **that/which** we have in summer.

Ex9:

- 1- which - Dublin is my favourite city.
- 2- whose - Amelia speaks English and Chinese fluently.
- 3- which/that - This smartphone takes great photos.
- 4- where - Buckingham Palace is in the centre of London.
- 5- which/that - Ferraris are very expensive.
- 6- who - Russell Crowe was born in New Zealand.
- 7- who - Mr Kemp is going to retire next year.

Ex10:

- 1- Crete, which is a Greek island, is popular with British tourists.
- 2- Jennifer Lopez, who is married a rich man, sings pop music.
- 3- Daniel Craig, who is the sixth James Bond, is afraid of flying.
- 4- Dakar, where the famous motor rally ends, is the capital of Senegal.
- 5- Robert Pattinson, whose films include 'Harry Potter' and the 'Twilight' series, was born in London.
- 6- Halloween, which is celebrated in October, is a popular UK festival.

Ex11: 1-**- Defining relative clauses are:**

who is believed to be responsible for the design of the tower

- Non-defining relative clauses are:

which is one of the most important buildings in Seville, Spain

which was originally a minaret

who began work in 1184 CE

which is in Marrakesh, Morocco

2- people – who, that.

- animals and things – which ,that.

- places – where, which, that

Ex12: 1- which/that 2- which 3- where 4- who/that**5- Defining relative clauses are:**

- which/ that is situated in the Jordanian desert

- Who/that love exploring historical Roman ruins

6- Non-defining relative clauses are:

- which was built at the beginning of the fourth century CE

- where horses may have been kept

Ex13: 1- N 2-D 3- N 4- N 5- N 6- N 7- N 8- D 9- D 10- N.

Ex14: 1- It was in 2012CE that the Olympic Games were held in London.

- 2012CE was the year in which/when the Olympic Games were held in London.

- The time when the Olympic Games were held in London was in 2012CE.

2- London was the place where the Olympic Games were held in 2012CE.

- The place where the Olympic Games were held in 2012EC was London.

- It was London that the Olympic Games were held in 2012CE.

3- The event that took place in London in 2012CE was the Olympic Games.

- The event that was held in London in 2012CE was the Olympic Games.

- It was the Olympic Games that took place (was held) in London in 2012CE.

- What was held in London in 2012CE was the Olympic Games.

Ex15: 1- Abd al-Rahman I was the person who built the Great Mosque in Cordoba in 784 CE.

- The person who built the Great Mosque in Cordoba in 784CE was Abd al-Rahman I.

- It was Abd al-Rahman I that built the Great Mosque in Cordoba in 784 CE.

2- The mosque that was built by Abd al-Rahman I in 784 CE was the Great Mosque in Cordoba.

- The mosque that was built by Abd al-Rahman I in Cordoba in 784 CE was the Great Mosque.

- It was the Great Mosque in Cordoba that was built by Abd al-Rahman I in 784 CE.

- What Abd al-Rahman I built in Cordoba in 784 CE was the Great Mosque.

3- The year when the Great Mosque in Cordoba was built by Abd al-Rahman I was (in) 784 CE.

- 784CE was the year when/in which the Great Mosque in Cordoba was built by Abd al-Rahman I.

- It was in/the year 784CE that the Great Mosque in Cordoba was built by Abd al-Rahman I.

Ex16:- The person who invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century was Al-Jazari.

- Al Jazari was the person who invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.

- It was Al-Jazari who/that invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.

- The mechanical clock was the thing that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century.

- What Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century was the mechanical clock.

- The thing that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century was the mechanical clock.

- It was the mechanical clock that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century.

- The twelfth century was the period/time when Al-Jazari invited the mechanical clock.

- It was the twelfth century that Al Jazari invented the mechanical clock.

- The period/time when Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock was the twelfth century.

Ex17: 1- The person who contributed to the invention of the oud was Al-Kindi.

2- The country where Jabir ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory was Iraq.

3- It was Ali ibn Nafi' who established the first music school in the world.

4- It was Jabir ibn Hayyan who/that also invented ink that can be read in the dark.

5- It is for his work in geometry that Al-Kindi is especially famous.

6- It is Taha Hussain who/that is especially famous for his work in literature.

7- The year when the first athletic event for disabled athletes took place was **in** 1948 CE.

- The year **in** which the first athletic event for disabled athletes took place was 1948 CE.

Ex18: 1- Queen Rania who opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE.

2- The year when Petra was made a World Heritage Site was in 1985 CE.

- The year in which Petra was made a World Heritage Site was 1985 CE.

3- 11 p.m. when I stopped working.

4- who/that has influenced me most is my father.

5- that/which I like most of all is Geography.

6- the heat that/which made the journey unpleasant.

Ex19: 1-The reason why I've come is to discuss my future with you.

2- The thing that impresses me more than anything else is your generosity.

3- The place where the jewels are hidden is under the floor at 23 Robin Hood Road, Epping.

- Under the floor at 23 Robin Hood Road is the place where the jewels are hidden.

4- The person who works harder than anybody else in this organisation is Mary.

- Mary is the person in this organisation who works harder than anybody else.

5- The day (when) the Second World War ended in Europe was 7 May 1945

- 7 May 1945 was the day (when) the Second World War ended in Europe.

6- What we now need are actions rather than words.

- Actions rather than words are what we now need.

7- What I enjoyed most in the Ballet Frankfurt performance was the brilliant music.

- The brilliant music was what I enjoyed most in the Ballet Frankfurt performance.

Ex20: 1- production 2- medical 3- ninth 4- inheritance 5- original 6- invention 7- discoveries

8-influential 9- educational 10- reputation 11- attractive 12- artificially

Ex21: 1- archaeological 2- education 3- translate 4- install 5- appreciate 6- collection

Ex22: 1- installation 2- collection 3- educational 4- appreciate 5- archaeology 6- translator.

Ex23: 1- produce 2- Traditionally 3- weaving 4- attractive 5- creation.

Ex24: 1- creation 2- appreciate 3- attraction 4- discover

Ex25: 1- medical 2- discoveries 3- prescription 4- infections 5- diagnosis 6- intention 7- surgery 8- belief 9- successful 10- conclusions

Ex 26: 1- tradition 2- extremely 3- weaving 4- organization 5- intended 6- children 7- training
8- people 9- brought
10 tourism

Unit Five: The Arts (الوحدة الخامسة أربع قطع)

- Vocabulary

- إحتفظ هذه الكلمات بالعربي لأنها تفيدك بشكل عام في التعبير وسؤال المعاني والتفكير الناقد (Critical Thinking):

	Word	المعنى بالعربية		Word	المعنى بالعربية
1-	handicrafts	حرف يدوية	29-	delicate	ناعم/جميل/حنون
2-	silk	حرير	30-	transparent	شفاف
3-	value	قيمة	31-	commercially	تجاري
4-	established	تأسس	32-	ingredients	مكونات
5-	promote	يروج/يسوق	33-	orchestra	فرقة موسيقية
6-	visual	مرئي	34-	keen to	حريص على
7-	Contemporary	معاصر	35-	items	قطع
8-	novels	روايات	36-	display	يعرض/معرض
9-	poems	قصائد	37-	pottery	فخار
10-	immediately	حالا/آني	38-	ivory	عاج
11-	inspiration	إلهام	39-	jug	دورق/شاف
12-	absolutely	مطلقا	40-	incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق
13-	patience	صبر	41-	concert	حفل/حفل موسيقي
14-	extremely	كثير جداً			
15-	scenes	مناظر/مشاهد	42-	silk	
16-	vast	واسع	43-	soft furnishing	
17-	Apart	بعيداً/بمناى	44-	textiles	
18-	passionate	شغوف	45-	wall hangings	
19-	ancient	قديم جداً	46-	wooden toys	
20-	regularly	بشكل منتظم			
21-	demonstrations	عروض توضيحية			
22-	professions	مهن			
23-	obsession	هوس			
24-	Phoenicians	الفينيقيون			
27-	liquid	سائل			
28-	bends	ينثني/ينثني			

Exercise 1: Complete the sentences with words from the box above:

- 1- They used to kill elephants for their in Africa.
- 2- She's on (playing) tennis.
- 3- He's always wanted to find an old car to buy but recently it's become an
- 4- Most students nowadays do not appreciate the of their teachers.
- 5- I like reading and short stories.

إحفظ انجليزي-انجليزي-عربي:

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
ceramics (n) ceramic (adj)	the art of producing something made from clay or porcelain, or the clay or porcelain items themselves	خزفي
conservatory (n)	(American usage for British conservatoire) a school where people are trained in music or acting	المعهد الموسيقي
Fine Arts	drawings, paintings and sculptures that are admired for their beauty and have no practical use	الفنون الجميلة
installation (n) install (v)	an art exhibit often involving video or moving parts	نوع من انواع الفن
performing arts (n)	a type of art that can combine acting, dance, painting and film to express an idea	الفنون المسرحية
textiles (plural noun)	types of cloth or woven fabric	الغزل والنسيج
translation (noun) translate (verb) translator (noun)	the process of converting documents from one language to another	الترجمة
visual arts (n)	art such as painting or sculpture that you look at, as opposed to literature or music	الفنون المرئية غير المقروءة وغير المسموعة
showcase (verb) showcase (noun)	to exhibit or display	يعرض
underline (verb)	to emphasise, to highlight	يضع خط / يظهر اهمية
exhibition	an event during which works of art are displayed	معرض / احتفالية
gallery	a place where art is shown	معرض
heritage	features belonging to the culture of a particular society, such as traditions, languages or buildings, which still exist from the past and which have a historical importance	ارث
sculpture	the art of forming solid objects that represent a thing, person, idea, etc. out of a material such as wood, clay, metal or stone, or an object made in this way	نحت / منحوت / تمثال

Exercise 2: Complete the following sentences with words from the table above:

- 1- The arts of painting and sculpture, rather than literature and music are called
- 2- The objects produced by shaping and heating clay is called

Unit Five Text One: The arts in Jordan

الفنون في الأردن

Jordan has a very rich cultural heritage thanks to the support of the Department of Culture and the Arts, **which** was founded in 1966 CE. Since then, the department has built up an exciting, ongoing programme of cultural activities related to all the arts: music, visual arts, performing arts and the written word.

للأردن إرث ثقافي غني يعود لدعم قسم الثقافة والفنون والذي تم تأسيسه عام 1966 للميلاد. منذ ذلك الحين أعد القسم برنامجاً مدهلاً مستمراً للنشاطات الثقافية مرتبطاً بكل الفنون كالموسيقى والفنون المرئية والفنون الأدائية والمكتوبة.

In 1979 CE, the Royal Society of Fine Arts (RSFA) was established to promote visual arts in Jordan and other countries in the region. **It** has links with major art galleries around the world in order to encourage artists from different cultures to learn from each other.

تم تأسيس المجمع الملكي للفنون الجميلة عام 1979 لتسويق الفنون المرئية في الأردن وبلاد أخرى في المنطقة. له علاقات مع معارض فنية رئيسية حول العالم لتشجيع الثقافات من دول مختلفة ليتعلموا من بعضهم.

The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts is one of the most important art museums in the Middle East. The collection includes over 2,000 works of art, including paintings, sculptures, photographs, installations, textiles and ceramics, by more than 800 artists from 59 countries. In 2013 CE, **it** held Jordan's largest art exhibition called '70 Years of Contemporary Jordanian Art'.

يعد معرض الأردن الوطني أحد أهم المتاحف الفنية في الشرق الأوسط. تضم المجموعة أكثر من 2000 عمل فني كالرسم والنحت والتصوير والتركيب والنسيج والسيراميك قام بها 800 فنان من 59 دولة. في عام 2013 انعقد المعرض في أكبر معرض للفنون في الأردن وسمي 70 عاماً من الفن الأردني المعاصر.

Until the 1990s, most Jordanian literature was only available in Arabic. However, thanks to PROTA (the Project of Translation from Arabic), many Jordanian plays, novels, short stories and poems are now translated into English, and people all over the world are able to read and appreciate **them**.

كان الفن الأردني وحتى التسعينيات متوفراً فقط باللغة العربية. ولكن بفضل "برنامج الترجمة من العربية" تم ترجمة العديد من الروايات والمسرحيات والقصص القصيرة والقصائد إلى اللغة الإنجليزية. فيستطيع الناس حول العالم قراءتها وتقييمها.

Every year, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) chooses a different Arab city as the Arab Cultural Capital. In 2002 CE, the city of Amman was awarded **this** title.

تختار منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتعليم والعلوم والثقافة مدينة عربية كعاصمة للثقافة العربية. منتحت العاصمة الأردنية عمان هذا اللقب.

Jordan has a centuries-old musical heritage. The National Music Conservatory (NMC) opened in 1986 CE, making it possible for more Jordanian students to study music seriously.

للأردن إرث موسيقي يرجع عمره لقرن من الزمان، تم افتتاح المركز الوطني للموسيقى عام 1986 معطياً الأردنيين فرصه دراسة الموسيقى بشكل جدي.

In 1987 CE, the National Centre for Culture and Arts was created, **which** showcases theatre and dance in Jordan and in the region.

وفي عام 1987 تم إنشاء المركز الوطني للثقافة والفنون والذي يتم فيه عروض مسرحية و رقص في الأردن والمنطقة.

Realising the value of art and culture, Jordan decided to offer Jordanians and the world an annual arts festival. In 1981 CE, the Jerash Festival for Culture and Arts was founded. This three-week-long summer programme is one of the largest cultural activities in the region. **It** takes place in the important archaeological site of Jerash, **which** underlines the close relationship between the arts and Jordan's cultural history.

قررت الأردن مدركة قيمة الفن والثقافة اتاحة الفرصة للأردنيين وللعالم أجمع عمل مهرجان سنوي للفنون. ففي عام 1981 تم تأسيس مهرجان جرش للثقافة والفنون. هذا الإحتفال الصيفي ذا الثلاث أسابيع يعد واحد من اكبر المهرجانات في المنطقة. يحدث هذا المهرجان في المكان التاريخي في جرش والذي يؤكد على العلاقة الحميمة بين الفن وتاريخ الأردن الثقافي.

Exercise 3: Now, answer the following questions:

1- How does the Royal Society of Fine Arts show its support for the arts in Jordan?

.....

2- What makes The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts a major institution in the world of art?.....

.....

3- How has translation helped Jordanian literature?

.....

4- What is the significance of the location of the annual Jerash Festival?

.....

5- 'To truly understand a country's culture, you have to understand its artistic heritage.' Do you agree or disagree? Justify your answer.

.....

6- Mention an achievement of "the Department of Culture and the Arts"?

.....

7- When was the Royal Society of Fine Arts established and why?

.....

8- What does the collection of The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts include?

9- What does "PROTA" stand for?

10- Write down three genres that "PROTA" helped in translating.

11- When was Amman entitled as "the Arab Cultural Capital"?

12- What do the underlined pronouns refer to?

13- (Critical Thinking) What are the advantages and disadvantages of festivals such as "the Jerash Festival for Culture and Arts"?

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
sand artist (n) sand art (n)	someone who models sand into an artistic form	فن الرمال
lifelike (adj)	very similar to the person or thing represented	شبيه
brehtaking (adj)	wonderful, awe-inspiring	رائع

Exercise 4: Choose words from the table above to complete the following sentences:

- 1- With time and skill, extremely beautiful scenes can be created, for example, camels traveling through the vast deserts.
- 2-s use artificial colors, sand and tools to create mini paintings.

Unit Five Text Two: Sand Bottle Artists' Inspiration

إلهام فناني القوارير الرملية

You only have to look at Jordan's beautiful mountains to see where the country's sand bottle artists get **their** inspiration from. This has led to an absolutely amazing traditional art form. Today, sand artists use artificial colors, sand and tools to create mini paintings, sometimes only a few centimeters high, in glass bottles. These 'paintings without a brush' need an eye for detail, and a lot of patience. With time and skill, extremely beautiful scenes can be created, for example, lifelike camels traveling through the vast deserts. The end result is totally breathtaking. Anyone watching a sand artist at work will realize immediately how much skill is needed for this work.

يلزمك فقط النظر إلى الجبال الجميلة في الأردن لتعرف من أين يحصل فناني قوارير الرمل على إلهامهم. أدى هذا إلى نشوء فن تقليدي مذهل. يستخدم الفنانون هذه الأيام ألوان وأدوات صناعية لخلق لوحات فنية صغيرة أحياناً لا يصل ارتفاعها لعدة سنتيمترات في علب زجاجية. هذه اللوحات التي يتم رسمها بلا ريشة تحتاج إلى نظرة تفصيلية والكثير من الصبر. يمكن خلق مشاهد رائعة الجمال من خلال المهارة والوقت. على سبيل المثال يتم رسم جمال كالحقيقية تمشي في وسط صحراء واسعة. النتيجة النهائية تخطف الأنفاس. فأي شخص يشاهد فناني الزجاجات الرملية سيدرك حالاً المهارة المطلوبة لهذا العمل.

Exercise 5: Now, answer these questions:

- 1- Where should we look to see where sand bottle artists get their inspiration from?
- 2- What is the size of those bottle paintings?
- 3- What do artists use to make such beautiful works?
- 4- What does the pronoun "their" refer to?
- 5- (Critical Thinking): Artists these days ask for high price for such sand bottles, do you think this is a positive thing or not, do you agree that prices should be accessible for each one?

احفظ انجليزي-انجليزي-عربي:

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
furnace	a container which is heated to a very high temperature, so that substances that are put inside it, such as metal, will melt or burn	فرن
solidifying	to become solid or to make something solid	يتصلب
semi-opaque	preventing light from travelling through, and therefore not transparent or translucent	ليس بالشفاف شبيه بالداكن
fine	smooth and soft	خفيف \ لطيف
transparent	you can see through it very clearly	شفاف
cobalt	(having) a deep blue or greenish-blue colour	كوبلت
turquoise	bluish green in colour	اخضر مُزرق
glassblowing (n) blow (v)	the art of shaping a piece of hot, melted glass by blowing air into it through a tube	نفخ الزجاج
demonstration (n) demonstrate (v)	an act of explaining and showing how to do something, or how something works	توضيحات
craftsman (n)	someone who is very skilled at a particular craft, a job or an activity that requires skills and in which they make things with their hands	حرفي

Exercise 6: Complete the following sentences with words from the table above:

- 1- The window was practically!
- 2- This room's like a, it is very hot! Open the window.
- 3- Is an old international traditional craft.

Unit Five Text Three: Adnan, a professional craftsman

عدنان الحرفي

Adnan, a professional craftsman, is at work in his studio. With the oven at 1,400 degrees Centigrade, 20 hours a day, a glass-making studio isn't the most comfortable place to be. For Adnan, however, this is more than just a job. 'My family has been blowing glass for around 700 years,' he says. 'My father learnt the craft from his father, and he taught it to me when I was a child.'

عدنان حرفي محترف في عمله في الأستديو. مع الفرن ذا ال 1400 درجة مئوية طوال عشرين ساعة في اليوم، فالمكان المخصص لصناعة الزجاج ليس بالمكان المريح لتكون هناك. انها اكثر من وظيفة بالنسبة لعدنان "فعللتني نفخت الزجاج لاكثر من 700 عام." يقول عدنان. "فلقد تعلم والدي الحرفة من والده وعلمني هو هذه الحرفة منذ كنت طفلاً.

Adnan is passionate about this ancient craft, and regularly gives demonstrations and workshops to teach young people the skills of glassblowing.

عدنان متحمس بشأن هذه الحرفة القديمة، ويعطي ايضاحات عملية وورشات عمل بشكل منتظم ليعلم الشباب مهارات نفخ وتشكيل الزجاج.

He strongly believes that unless we interest more young people in learning the craft, nobody will know how to make hand-blown glass in the future. 'These days, young people don't always want to follow **their** parents' professions, and, added to that, glassblowing isn't an easy job. **It** has to be an obsession, as it is for me!'

يؤمن بأنه إذا لم نعمل على إثارة اهتمام الشباب لتعلم الحرفة، لن يعرف أحد كيفية عمل الزجاج في المستقبل. "هذه الأيام لا يريد الشباب اتباع مهن أهاليهم" ويضيف إلى ذلك "تشكيل الزجاج بالنفخ ليست بالمهنة السهلة، يجب أن تكون هوس كما هي بالنسبة لي."

Adnan still uses the technique that was first developed by the Phoenicians some 2,000 years ago. First, **he** pushes a thin metal blowpipe into the boiling hot furnace. Secondly, he lifts out the liquid sand and lays it on a metal plate. After that, he blows the red-hot glass until **it** becomes more flexible. Then **he** pulls and bends the glass into shape. He has to work extremely quickly because the liquid sand is already solidifying into glass. Adnan is making a delicate swan. Through the semi-opaque glass, you can see fine lines of turquoise, green and blue.

لا زال عدنان يستخدم التقنية التي استخدمها الفينيقيون قبل حوالي 2000 سنة. أولاً يقوم بدفع قضيب النفخ الغليظ في الفرن الساخن الذي يغلي. ثانياً، ثم يحمل الرمل المسال ويضعه على صينية حديدية. بعدها ينفخ الزجاج المحمر من الحرارة حتى يصبح أكثر مرونة. ثم يشد ويثني الزجاج إلى أشكال. يجب عليه أن يعمل بسرعة فائقة لأن الزجاج المسال يتصلب إلى زجاج. عدنان يصنع أوزة رقيقة. تری خلال الزجاج المعتم خطوطاً تركوازية (فیروزية) وخضراً وزرقاء.

'The sand gives us transparent, or "white", glass,' Adnan explains. 'We get this beautiful dark, cobalt blue by adding the metal cobalt to the melted glass. Then, **this** blue becomes a lighter, sea-green turquoise after adding copper. Finally, we decorate the glass by hand.'

يوضح عدنان " يعطينا الرمل زجاجاً شفافاً أو أبيضاً" ونحصل على هذا اللون الكوبالتي المائل على الأزرق بإضافة معدن الكوبالت إلى الزجاج المذاب. ثم يصبح هذا الزرق أخف ومائل إلى خطرة البحر بعد إضافة النحاس. ومن ثم نزخرف الزجاج يدوياً."

'These days we recycle broken glass. We also use commercially produced colours instead of using natural ingredients as in the past. Apart from that, nothing else about this craft has changed through the centuries. You can't use a machine to do this work,' he says. 'The old ways are still the best.'

" نعمل هذه الأيام على إعادة تكرير الزجاج القديم. ونستخدم أيضاً ألواناً تجارية بدلاً من استخدام مكونات صبيعية كما في الماضي. وغير ذلك، لم يتغير شيء على هذه المهنة عبر القرون. لا نستطيع استخدام ماكينات للقيام بهذا العمل" يقول " فالطرق القديمة مازالت هي الأفضل."

Exercise 7: A- Now, answer the following questions:

1- What type of glass do they use these days to produce the nice works?

.....

2- Can we use machines to do this work? Why? Why not?

.....

3- What do they use to get that beautiful dark?

.....

4- Who developed the technique Adnan is using these days?

5- According to the fourth paragraph, what are the steps Adnan uses to produce his works?

6- How can we save this tradition, according to Adnan?

7- Critical Thinking: Adnan said that his father taught him this craft. What does that mean for you when fathers teach their children their crafts?

8- What do the bolded pronouns refer to?

9- What does the underlined word "centuries" mean?

B- Read the article again and choose the correct answers.

1- A glass-making studio isn't comfortable because:

A- it hasn't changed much in hundreds of years. B- it's incredibly hot. C- everything is done by hand. D- it is very small.

2- Adnan runs workshops and gives demonstrations because

A- he wants young people to learn the craft. B- glassblowing isn't an easy job. C- it is an ancient craft. D- he has to work quickly.

3- A glassblower has to work very fast because

A- the furnace is extremely hot. B- machines are not used to do the work. C- hot, liquid glass becomes hard very quickly. D- he is making a glass swan.

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
furnishings (n) furnish (v)	the furniture and other things, such as curtains, in a room	أثاث
hanging (n) hang (v)	a large piece of cloth that is hung on a wall as a decoration	تعليقة
restore (v) restoration (n)	to repair or renovate a building, work of art, etc., so as to bring it back to its original condition	اعادة تهيئة يستعيد
qualify (v) qualification (n)	to be entitled to a particular benefit or privilege by fulfilling a necessary condition	يؤهل

Exercise 8: Complete the following sentences using words from the table above:

- 1- The government is trying to public confidence.
- 2- You'll never get a good job if you don't have any.....
- 3- If you wallpaper, you fix it to the wall.

Unit Five Text Four: Rashid's Blog

Hi! My name is Rashid. I'm staying in London for a week, with my family. I hope you enjoy reading my blog. **Wednesday:** Yesterday was brilliant. We decided to go to the Victoria and Albert Museum (also known as the V&A), **which** is a big museum of art and design in central London. It has one of the largest collections of Islamic art in the world and, as you can imagine, we were keen to have a look. We spent most of our time in the Jameel Gallery, which opened in 2006 CE. There were about 10,000 items on display (no, I didn't count them; the guide told us!). There were carpets and other textiles as well as pottery, ceramics, paintings and things made of ivory (from elephants), wood, metal and glass. My **favourite** thing was a beautiful Egyptian jug, **which** looked as if it was made out of glass. In fact it is rock crystal, and **it** was made over ten thousand years ago. The person **who** made it must have been incredibly skilled. We were at the V&A all day (there's a good café there, and an excellent shop too!). Then, although we were quite tired, in the evening we went to a concert at the Royal Albert Hall. The orchestra was from Germany and **it** was brilliant! We had comfortable seats, but a lot of people stood right in front of the orchestra. **They** didn't sit down at all! **I've never stood all the way through a concert**, and I don't think I'd like to!

محباً! اسمي راشد. أنا في لندن لمدة اسبوع، مع عائلتي. أأمل أن تستمتعوا في قراءة مدونتي. الأربعاء كان أمس يوم رائع. قررنا الذهاب إلى متحف فيكتوريا والبرت (معروف أيضاً بـ في اند أي)، وهو متحف كبير للفن والتصميم في وسط لندن. فيه إحدى أكبر المجموعات الفنية الإسلامية و كما يمكنك أن تتخيل كنا حريصين على أن نلقي نظرة. قضينا أغلب وقتنا في معرض جميل، الذي افتتح في عام 2006 للميلاد. كان هناك حوالي 10000 قطعة معروضة (لا، لم أعدّها؛ لقد أخبرنا الدليل!) كان هناك سجاد ومنسوجات أخرى وبعض الفخاريات أيضاً وبعض أعمال السيراميك، رسوم وأشياء مصنوعة من العاج (من الفيلة)، ومن الخشب والمعادن ومن الزجاج. أكثر ما أثار إعجابي هو دورق بدا كأنه مصنوع من الزجاج، في الحقيقة، إنه مصنوع من حجر الكريستال وكان قد صنع قبل حوالي عشرة آلاف عام. الأبد أن الشخص الذي صنعها كان ماهراً بشكل لا يصدق. كنا في المتحف طوال اليوم (يوجد مقهى جيد هناك، وكان متميز أيضاً!) ثم، بالرغم من أننا كنا منهكين تماماً، ذهبنا في المساء إلى حفلة موسيقية في قاعة البرت الملكية. كانت الفرقة الموسيقية من ألمانيا وكانت رائعة! حظينا بكراس مريحة لكن كان الكثيرون يقفون أمام الفرقة. لم يجلسوا نهائياً! لم أقف نهائياً طوال حفلة ولا اعتقد أنني أريد بذلك.

Exercise 9: Read the blog post quickly, and answer the questions.

- 1- Where was Rashid when he wrote the blog?
.....
- 2- What did he most enjoy looking at?
.....
- 3- Where did he go in the evening?
.....
- 4- What bothered him?
.....
- 5- Why did Rashid and his family decide to go to the V&A Museum?
.....
- 6- Name four materials that Rashid mentions.
.....
- 7- Look at the words and phrases in bold. Is Rashid using British or American English? Justify your answer.
.....
.....
- 8- Look at the sentences in brackets in lines 5–6. In your opinion, what question is Rashid answering and why?
.....
.....
- 9- Would you stand up all the way through a concert? Why/Why not?
.....
.....
- 10- Critical Thinking: What is the goal of blogs? Would you wish to have one?
.....
.....
- 11- What do the underlined words refer to?
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Grammar: A- Articles: أدوات التعريف والتنكير

- USING a/an:

- We usually use **a/an** before countable **singular** nouns when we are mentioning them for the first time.
- نستخدم (a/an) عادة قبل الأسماء المعدودة المفردة عندما تذكرها لأول مرة.
- Hassan lives in **a big house**, there is **a garden** next to it with **an apple tree**.

- نستخدم (a) مع الأسماء المعدودة المفردة والعبارات التي تبدأ بصوت حرف ساكن:
- There's **a bird** in that tree.
- He's wearing **a uniform**.

- نستخدم (an) مع الأسماء المعدودة المفردة التي تبدأ بصوت حرف علة (a, e, i, o, u):
- She is **an artist**.
- They've got **an apple tree** in their garden.
- I have **an Mp3** CD.
- Michael Jordan is **an NBA** player.

- We use a / an to refer to:

نستخدم أدوات التنكير (a/an) للدلالة على

1- A person's job: وظيفة أحد ما

- She's a doctor.
- He's an engineer.

2- Something or someone for the first time: للدلالة على شيء أو شخص للمرة الأولى

- We saw an elephant in the zoo.
- A policeman stopped me in my car.

3- A person or thing, but not a special person or thing: شيء أو شخص غير محدد

- To write a letter, I need a piece of paper, a pen, and an envelope.

4- One (not two, three or four): لدلالة على ان الشيء أو الشخص واحد

- Her letter was only a page long.
- He won a million JD.

- USING the:

1- If we are talking about something that the listener/reader knows about, we use the.

- بينما اذا كنا نتحدث عن شيء يعرف المتكلم او القاري عنه فإننا نستخدم (the).
- Hassan lives in the big house near the post office.
- The garden is beautiful.

2- We use the when we are talking about something that is unique.

- نستخدم (the) عندما نتحدث عن شيء فريد من نوعه:
- The Earth goes round the Sun.
- She's the only woman to have won two Nobel Prizes.

3- We use the when we are talking about seas, oceans, rivers, groups of islands (but NOT individual islands), mountain ranges and countries that include the in their name.

- نستخدم (the) عندما نتحدث عن البحار والمحيطات والانهار ومجموعات الجزر (ليس الجزر المفردة) وسلاسل الجبال والدول التي تشتمل اسمائها على (the) اي التي تتكون اسمائها من عدة كلمات:
- The Mediterranean Sea separates Europe from Africa.
- Sri Lanka is in the Indian Ocean.
- They took a boat trip along the river Nile.
- Mallorca is one of the Balearic Islands.
- The Rocky Mountains are in the United States.

4- We use the when we are talking about superlative adjectives.

- نستخدم (the) عندما نتكلم عن الصفات في حالات التقصيل:
- The longest river in the USA is the Mississippi.

- USING no article:

1- We use no article with uncountable nouns for general statements and with countable nouns either in their plural or singular forms for general statements.

- لا نستخدم أي أدوات قبل الأسماء غير المعدودة في الجمل العامة ولا الأسماء في صيغة الجمع أو الأفراد في حالاتها العامة:

- Chocolate tastes good.
- Children usually like sweets and chocolate.
- **Tigers** are wild animals.
- That shop sells sweets.
- Sheep produce wool, and hens lay eggs.
- She likes **milk**.

2- We use no article before most countries, languages, continents, individual mountains (but NOT mountain ranges), lakes, waterfalls, towns, streets, days, months and years.

- لا نستخدم أدوات التعريف أو التذكير قبل أغلب أسماء الدول واللغات والقارات والجبال المنفردة والبحيرات والشلالات والبلدات والشوارع والأيام والأشهر والسنوات:

- The language spoken in **Jordan** is **Arabic**.
- **Libya** is in **Africa**.
- He was the first man to climb **Mount Everest** in the Himalayas.
- They have a home near **Lake Geneva**.
- **Niagara Falls** separates **Canada** from the USA.
- They live in **Oxford Street** in **London**.
- She was born on **Monday, 23 April**.
- The university was opened in **2001** CE.

3- Before the titles when the name is mentioned: قبل الأسماء عند ذكر الألقاب

- Queen Elizabeth - King Abdullah

4- Before times of day and night: قبل أوقات اليوم واللييلة

- at dawn - at sunrise - at night - at midnight

5- With means of transportation if it is preceded by (by): قبل وسائل المواصلات

- He comes to school **by bus**.

6- With the following nouns when they are used for their primary purposes:

- We go to **market** to buy -----
- bed** to sleep.
- work** to work
- hospital** as patients.
- school** to study.

Exercise 10: Complete the text with a, an, the or – (zero article).

The Amman International Theatre Festival is said to be (1) biggest of its kind across (2) entire Middle East and (3) North Africa. It is held annually in (4) April, and (5) festival is (6) attempt to promote (7) Jordanian theatre. Performances are in (8) English and (9) Arabic. Many international stars and famous people from (10) Hollywood attend. Usually, (11) festival lasts for about eight days. (12) visitors can choose (13) days on which they want to attend. This is (14) great way to learn about different cultures at one event.

Exercise 11: Complete the text with a, an, the or – (zero article).

- 1- Rami's father is pilot.
- 2- Hani is best student in the class.
- 3- Nile is longest river in the world.
- 4- Have you got pen?
- 5- She bought umbrella yesterday.
- 6- He wears uniform at work.
- 7- My brother goes to university.
- 8- I saw boy in our garden. boy was crying.
- 9- Rashid comes from United Arab Emirates.
- 10- My father is accountant.
- 11- They went to Syria by car.
- 12- My favorite subject is English.
- 13- Long live queen.
- 14- I like football very much.
- 15- Amman is capital of Jordan.
- 16- Last night, moon was shining.
- 17- They flew to Republic of China last week.
- 18- (2016) Zaid's friends used to go fishing once a month, but they stopped doing that when they moved to city of Irbid.

Exercise 12 Complete the sentences with a, an, the or –.

- 1 - Amman is capital of Jordan.
- 2- It's one of oldest cities in world.
- 3- Petra is in south of Jordan. It's important archaeological site.
- 4- It was important city until huge earthquake destroyed it in about 663 CE.
- 5- Aqaba is next to Red Sea; people often go there for their holidays.
- 6- I'm very interested in history, in particular history of Jordan.

Exercise 13: Read and correct the dialogues. Add a, an or the where necessary.

- 1- A: I'm reading really good book.
B: Oh, what's title?
- 2- A: Do you ever go to art galleries?
B: Yes, I do. There's big gallery in our town, and I often go there.
- 3- A: Where are Pontic Mountains?
- B: They're in Turkey.
- 4- A: Is there art museum in Amman?
- B: Yes, go to National Museum of Fine Arts.
- 5- A: Do you like music? B: Yes, I do. I play piano, actually.

B- American vs British English

<u>American English (AE)</u>	<u>British English (BE)</u>
simple past	present perfect
gotten	got
have	have got
take	have
gosh	goodness
recess	have a break
apartment	flat
candy	sweets
conservatory	conservatoire
cookie	biscuit
drugstore	chemist's
elevator	lift
fall	autumn
gas	petrol
pants	trousers
school principal	head teacher
trunk	boot (of a car)
colour	color
centimeters	centimetres
realize	realise
trash/garbage	rubbish
sidewalk	pavement
vacation	holiday
harbor	harbour
theater	theatre
modeling	modelling
favorite	favourite
normalize	normalise
center	centre
jeweler	jeweller
specialize	specialise
neighbor	neighbour
liter	litre
paralyzed	paralysed
canceled	cancelled
marvelous	marvellous
dialog	dialogue
catalog	catalogue
program	programme
authorize	authorize
practice (v)	practice (v)
practice (n)	practice (n)
archeology	archaeology
homeopathy	homoeopathy

Exercise 14: The following sentences are in British English. Rewrite them in American English.

- 1- Have you seen the textile workshop yet?
- 2- Let's have a look at that first.
- 3- Some of you have got tired from all the walking today.
.....
- 4- Would anyone like to have a short rest?

Exercise 15: The following sentences are in British English. Rewrite them in American English.

- 1- 'Goodness, you've got very tall!' said my aunt.
.....
- 2- Have you ever been to an aquarium?
.....
- 3- We're too late – the bus has just left.
.....
- 4- I think it's time to have a break.
- 5- I haven't done my homework yet.
.....

Exercise 16: Read the following text and find four examples of American English spelling. Write them in the table:

"You only have to look at Jordan's beautiful mountains to see where the country's sand bottle artists get their inspiration from. This has led to an absolutely amazing traditional art form. Today, sand artists use artificial colors, sand and tools to create mini paintings, sometimes only a few centimeters high, in glass bottles. These 'paintings without a brush' need an eye for detail, and a lot of patience. With time and skill, extremely beautiful scenes can be created, for example, lifelike camels traveling through the vast deserts. The end result is totally breathtaking. Anyone watching a sand artist at work will realize immediately how much skill is needed for this work."

American English	British English
color	colour

Exercise 17: Write sentences using these words in American English spelling.

- 1- specialise:
2- jeweller:
3- centre:
4- normalise:
5- favourite:
6- modelling:
7- theatre:
8- harbour:

Exercise 18: Complete the following table.

	British English	American English
1-	neighbour	
2-		liter
3-	paralysed	
4-		canceled
5-	marvellous	
6-		harbor

Exercise 19: Mark is American and Bruce is British. How would Bruce say sentences 1–3 in British English? How would Mark say sentences 4–6 in American English?

- 1- Mark: Did you see that exhibition yet?
Bruce:
- 2- Mark: I usually take a shower in the morning.
Bruce:
- 3- Mark: I just had my breakfast.
Bruce:
- 4- Bruce: Where's Leo? Have you seen him anywhere?
Mark:
- 5- Bruce: I'd like to have a look at those paintings.
Mark:
- 6- Bruce: Leo's already done his project.
Mark:

Exercise 20: Look at these pairs of words that have the same meaning. Write Am (American English) or Br (British English) next to each word. Then check in a dictionary.

1 lift Br elevator Am	5 autumn ____ fall ____
2 pavement ____ sidewalk ____	6 rubbish ____ trash/garbage ____
3 candy ____ sweets ____	7 gas ____ petrol ____
4 vacation ____ holiday ____	8 cookie ____ biscuit ____

Exercise 21 (2016): The following sentences are in the American English, rewrite them in British English.

1- Did you see the new fashion catalog?
.....

2- I have a brother who lives in a wide apartment.
.....

Exercise 22 (2016): The following sentences are in British English, Write them down in American English.

1- Have you seen the new sport centre?
.....

2- I am going to have a look at these marvellous paintings.
.....

Writing: Argumentative Essay: المقالة الجدلية

'Craftspeople are skilled workers and should be paid better salaries.'

The job done by craftspeople only helps the economy if the people who publicise and sell their work are successful. Traditional crafts are usually not well publicised and are sold in very small amounts. This means that it would be impossible to provide a full and regular salary to a craftsman.

These days, it is common for people to choose mass-produced goods for the simple reason that they cost less and can be relied upon. What is more, it is evident that the world is changing, and that the place that craftspeople hold in society is becoming less affordable. For this reason they should not be paid an increased wage.

It could be argued that craftspeople endure difficult and tiring days and receive little money in recognition of this. However, they learn their trade as apprentices and do not have to suspend their income or pay a large amount of money for four years to get a university degree.

Thus it can be seen that craftspeople should not be paid increased salaries, because of the restructured economic system and the consequent shift in the importance of the crafts they produce.

- تكتب هذه المقالة الجدلية في أربع فقرات كالتالي:

- 1- المقدمة: ونضع فيها حقائق عن الموضوع، وبين للقارئ إلى أي اتجاه أنت متحيز.
- 2- الفقرة الأولى من العرض: اكتب رأيك ووضح سببك في اختيار هذا الرأي. أضف تفاصيل إلى الفقرة.
- 3- الفقرة الثانية من العرض: اكتب جملة أو جملتين عن الرأي الآخر. أثبت رأيك أن الرأي الآخر خاطيء.
- 4- الخاتمة: أعد صياغة رأيك واذكر/أي حقيقة أو اثنتين والتي ذكرت في السابق.

استخدم بعض من هذه التعبيرات:

Useful language:

It is understood that... It is often suggested that... Many people believe that... It is evident that... For this reason... It could be argued that... Thus it can be seen that...

Writing skills: Moving from one idea to another

Expressing opposition:

On one hand, ... On the other hand, ... /

In spite of this, ... / On the contrary, ... / Conversely, ...

Expressing continuation or addition:

Furthermore, ... / Likewise, ... /

One reason for this is ... / In addition, ...

Blank handwriting practice paper with horizontal dotted lines and a large, faint watermark reading 'أحمد' (Ahmed) diagonally across the page.

أهلاً بك يا فتى!

Handwriting practice sheet with horizontal lines and a large, faint watermark reading 'الخط' (Al-Khat) diagonally across the page.

Handwriting practice paper with horizontal lines and a large, faint watermark reading 'الخط' (Al-Khat) diagonally across the page.

Unit Five Answers

Ex1: 1- ivory 2- passionate 3- obsession 4- value 5- novels/poems

Ex2: 1- visual arts 2- ceramics

Ex3: 1- The Royal Society of Fine Arts promotes visual arts in Jordan and other countries in the region. ممكن تكمل لآخر الفقرة

2- It is a major institution in the world of arts as it includes over 2,000 works of art, including paintings, sculptures, photographs, installations, textiles and ceramics, by more than 800 artists from 59 countries.

3- Many Jordanian plays, novels, short stories and poems are now translated into English, and people all over the world are able to read and appreciate them.

4- It takes place in the important archaeological site of Jerash, which underlines the close relationship between the arts and Jordan's cultural history.

5- Yes, I agree with this because in order to appreciate a country's culture, you have to know and appreciate its artistic heritage.

6- The department has built up an exciting, ongoing programme of cultural activities.

7- The Royal Society of Fine Arts was established In 1979 CE to promote visual arts in Jordan and other countries in the region.

8- The collection includes over 2,000 works of art, including paintings, sculptures, photographs, installations, textiles and ceramics.

9- The Project of Translation from Arabic.

10- Plays, novels, and short stories.

11- In 2002 CE.

12-

Pronoun	Reference
which	the Department of Culture and the Arts
It	the Royal Society of Fine Arts
it	The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts
them	many Jordanian plays, novels, short stories and poems
this	the Arab Cultural Capital
which	the National Centre for Culture and Arts
It	the Jerash Festival for Culture and Arts/or This three-week-long summer programme
which	the important archaeological site of Jerash

13- Such festivals have advantages like bringing tourists to the country where they are held but they also have disadvantages such as making traffic jams and crowds of people gather in small place like Jerash which is a small city.

Ex4: 1- lifelike 2- sand artists.

Ex5: 1- We only should look at Jordan's beautiful mountains to see where the country's sand bottle artists get their inspiration from.

2- Sometimes, they are only a few centimeters high.

3- Sand artists use artificial colors, sand and tools to create mini paintings.

4- sand bottle artists.

5- I don't think that asking for high price for such artistic words is a good thing because it doesn't help people buy such works and as a result, artists will not sell enough works to get enough money for their life.

Ex6: 1- transparent 2- furnace 3- glassblowing

Ex7A: 1- They use recycled broken glass to produce nice works.

2- According to Adnan, he says that no machines can be used to produce such nice works, but for me, I believe yes, China has already made it for low price.

3- They get this beautiful dark, cobalt blue by adding the metal cobalt to the melted glass.

4- The Phoenicians developed the techniques that Adnan is using these days.

5- First, he pushes a thin metal blowpipe into the boiling hot furnace. Secondly, he lifts out the liquid sand and lays it on a metal plate. After that, he blows the red-hot glass until it becomes more flexible. Then he pulls and bends the glass into shape.

6- We should interest more young people in learning the craft.

7- When fathers teach their children their crafts, they are teaching them how to save their history and keep their roots deep in the land.

8-

Pronoun	Reference
he	Adnan
his	Adnan
he	(my father) or
He	Adnan's father
their	Adnan
It	young people
he	glassblowing
it	Adnan
he	the red-hot glass
this	Adnan cobalt blue

9- "centuries" mean: hundreds of years.

B- 1- B- it's incredibly hot. 2- A- he wants young people to learn the craft. 3- C- hot, liquid glass becomes hard very quickly.

Ex8: 1-restore 2- qualifications 3- hang

Ex9: 1- Rashid was in London.

2- He enjoyed looking at a beautiful Egyptian jug.

3- He went to a concert at the Royal Albert Hall.

4- The people who stood right in front of the orchestra. They didn't sit down at all! They bothered him a lot.

5- They decided to go to the V&A because it is a big museum of art and design in central London and it has one of the largest collections of Islamic art in the world.

6- Rashid mentioned ivory, wood, metal and glass.

7- Rashid is using British English, he uses present perfect and favourite which has "ou".

8- Rashid is answering the question: Did you count them? He is answering this question because he thought the readers would ask him such a question.

9- No, I would not stand all the way through a concert because that sounds impolite.

10- Blogs enable people to write what they want and enables other to read them easily. I would not wish to have one because I am not a famous person.

11-

Pronoun	Reference
which	the Victoria and Albert Museum (also
which	known as the V&A)
it	a beautiful Egyptian jug
who	a beautiful Egyptian jug
They	The person
I	a lot of people
	Rashid

Ex10: 1- the 2- the 3- – 4- – 5- the 6- an 7- – 8- – 9- – 10- – 11- the 12- – 13- the 14- a.

Ex11: 1- a 2- the 3- The/the 4- a 5- an 6- a 7- – 8- a -/the 9- the 10- an 11- – 12- – 13- the 14- – 15- the 16- The 17- the 18- the.

Ex12: 1- – /the/- 2- the/the 3- –/the/an 4- an/the 5- –/the 6- –/the/-.

Ex13: 1- **A: a really B: what's the title?**

2- **B: a big ...**

3- **A: the Pontic ...**

4- **A: an art ... B: the National ...**

5- **B: the piano**

Ex14: 1- Did you see the textile workshop yet?

2- Let's take a look at that first.

3- Some of you have gotten tired after all the walking today.

4- Would anyone like to take a short rest?

Ex15: 1- 'Gosh, you've gotten very tall!' said my aunt.

2- Did you go to an aquarium yet?

3- We're too late – the bus left already.

4- I think it's time for recess.

5- I didn't do my homework yet.

Ex16: 1- color – colour: In British English, we always use ou.

2- centimeters – centimetres: In British English, words such as centre are spelt -re.

3- traveling – travelling: In British English, we always double the consonant after a short vowel sound.

4- realize – realise: Until recently, -ise was always used in British English. Now it is common to see -ize (the standard American English spelling) in some British English.

Ex17: 1- When I go to university, I want to specialize in Astrophysics.

2- You need to take your necklace to the jeweler to get it fixed.

3- If you want to learn English, you could go to a language center.

4- This kind of medicine helps to normalize the heart's function.

5- My favorite meal is mansaf.

6- An architect can predict what a building will look like by modeling it on a computer.

7- Tomorrow evening, I'm going to the theater to see a play by Shakespeare.

8- When the boat arrived at the harbor, we knew we had reached Lebanon.

Ex18: 1- neighbor 2- litre 3- paralyzed 4- cancelled 5- marvelous 6- harbour.

Ex19: 1- Have you seen that exhibition yet?

2- I usually have a shower in the morning.

3- I've just had my breakfast.

4- Where's Leo? Did you see him anywhere?

5- I'd like to take a look at those paintings.

6- Leo already did his project.

Ex20: 1- lift Br / elevator Am

2- pavement Br / sidewalk Am

3- candy Am / sweets Br

4- vacation Am / holiday Br

5- autumn Br / fall Am

6- rubbish Br / trash/garbage Am

7- gas Am / petrol Br

8- cookie Am / biscuit Br

Ex21: 1- Have you seen the new fashion catalogue?

2- I have got a brother who lives in a wide flat.

Ex22: 1- Did you see the new sport center?

2- I am going to take a look at these marvelous paintings.